

The Prose Life of Alexander



PR
1119
.A2
no.143

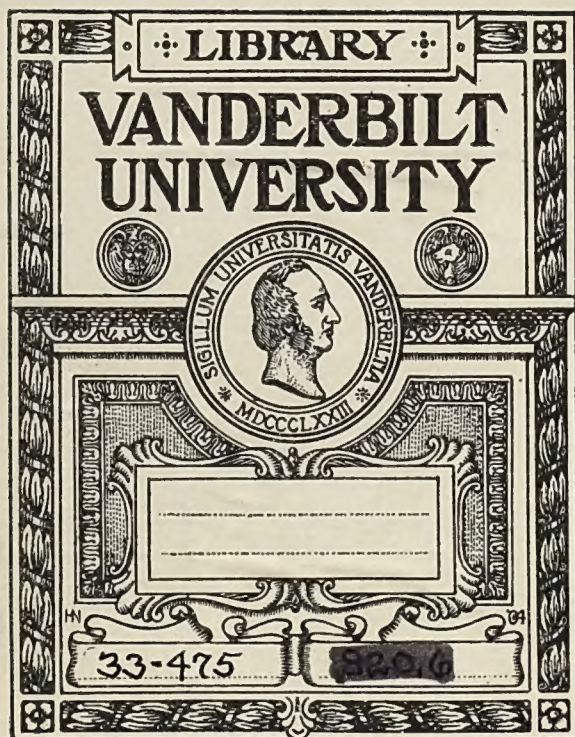
PR 1119.A2 no.143

The prose lif

cen



3 0081 003 325 564



no.143

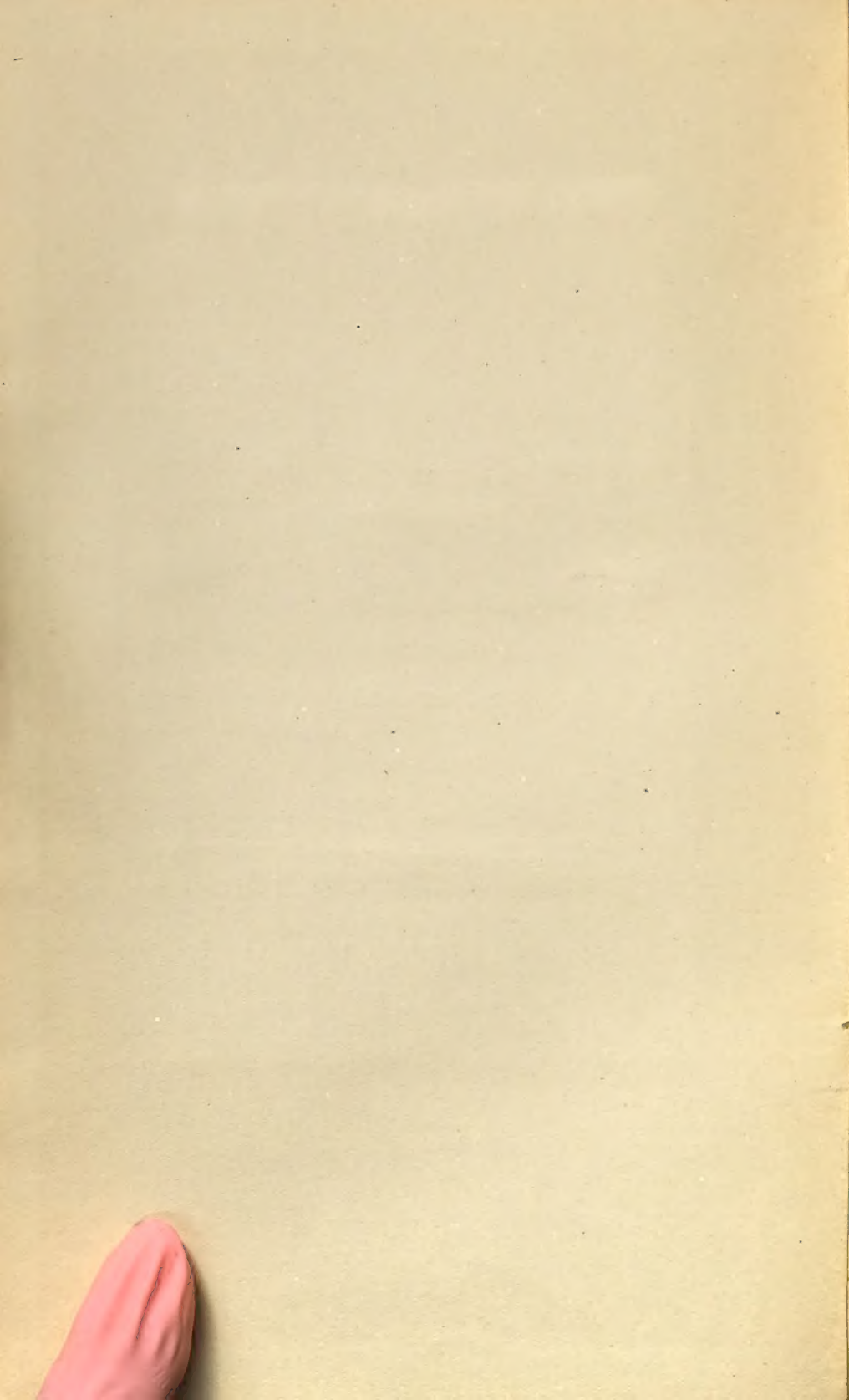
PR
1119
.A2
no.143

33475

Date Due

DEMCO-203

[illegible]



The Prose Life of Alexander.

(THORNTON MS.)

EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY.

Original Series, 143.

1913 (*for* 1911).

PRICE 10s.

OXFORD : HORACE HART
PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

Original Series
No. 143.

The Prose Life of Alexander.

FROM THE THORNTON MS.

EDITED BY

J. S. WESTLAKE, M.A.

THE TEXT.

*

LONDON :

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY. O.S. no. 143

BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.,

68-74 CARTER LANE, E.C.

AND BY HUMPHREY MILFORD, OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS,

AMEN CORNER, E.C.

1913 (*for* 1911)



PREFATORY NOTE

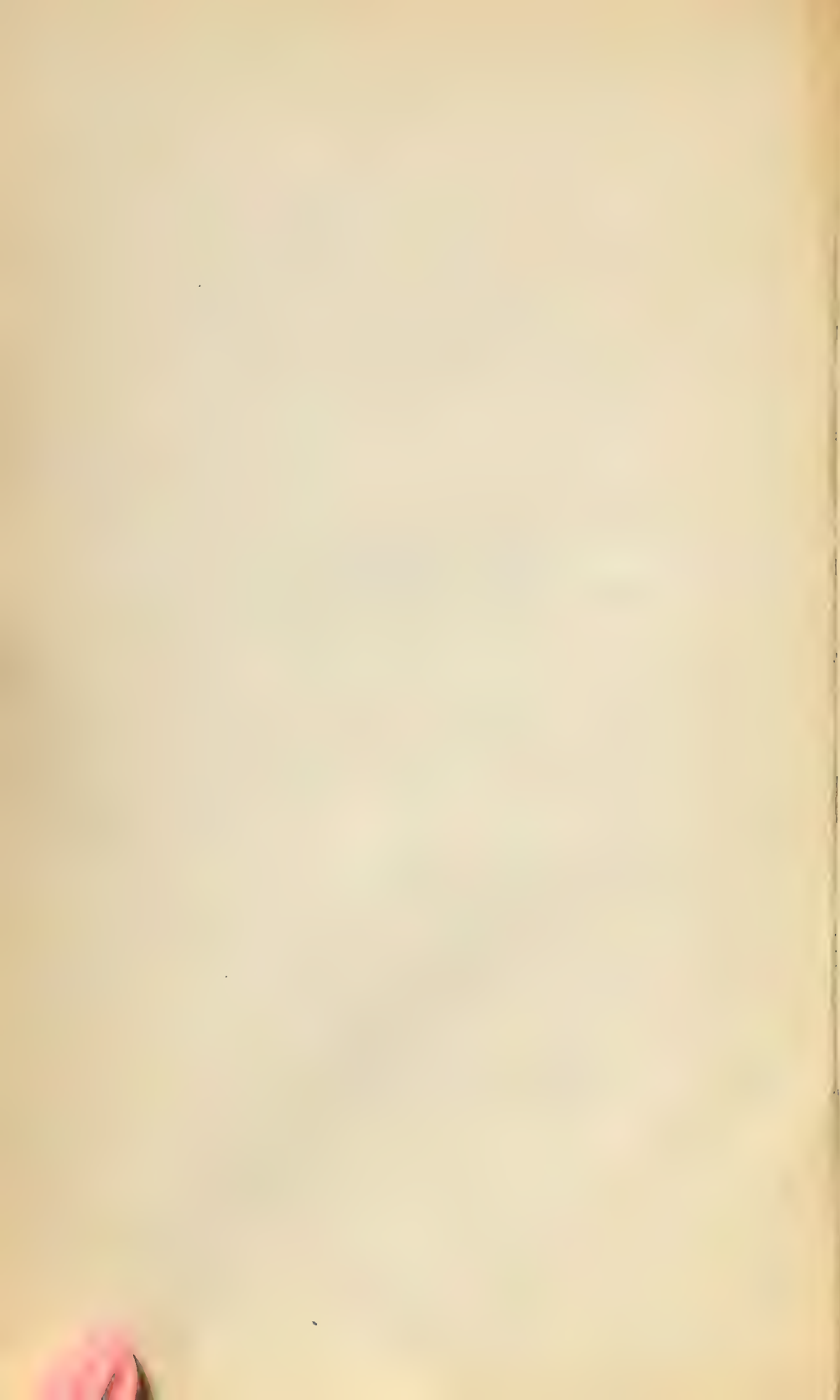
THE delay in issuing this important prose romance has been due to the prolonged illness of its editor, Mr. J. S. Westlake. Even now Mr. Westlake has not been able to attend to the revision and publication of the book. The collation with the manuscript has been made for the Society by Miss E. M. Thompson, the proofs have been read over by Mr. John Munro, and a few changes have been made in the side-notes, foot-notes and head-lines, which otherwise remain as Mr. Westlake left them. The translations from the Latin text which make good the lacunae in the manuscript have also been inserted by Mr. Westlake.

The Introduction, together with the Notes and Glossary, are reserved for a future volume. Mr. Westlake's elaborate side-notes provide, meanwhile, a useful epitome of the story.

The Society is greatly indebted to the Dean and Chapter of Lincoln for depositing the manuscript in the British Museum, and to the Keeper of the Manuscripts, Mr. J. P. Gilson, for receiving it there.

I. G.

THE PROSE LIFE OF ALEXANDER.



LIFE OF ALEXANDER

THE most learned Egyptians who know of the size of the earth, the waves of the sea, and the order of the heavens (betokening the way of the stars and the turning of the
 4 skies), have bequeathed these things to the whole world through the highness and the wisdom of magic knowledge. And they tell of a king of that land, by name Anectanabus, great in understanding, and full of love in astrology and mathematics. Now,
 8 upon a day it happened that a messenger came, and said unto him that Artaxerxes, king of the Persians, was drawing nigh towards him with a very great force of foes. Yet he did not call out his army, nor get ready his advance. Instead of this,
 12 he hurried into his bed-chambers in his palace, and, taking down a brazen shell, which was full of rain-water, and holding in his hand a brazen rod, sought by magic spells to summon the devils. By which wizardry he felt, in the shell itself, the fleets
 16 sailing over him amid fearful affray.

Of the Wisdom of the Egyptians and of their king Anectanabus.

How Anectanabus saw by wizardry the on-coming of the Persian hosts.

Now there were lords of Anectanabus set in sway over his armies to guard the Persian border.

And one hapless man coming to him, besought him: 'O
 20 most mighty King Anectanabus, there ariseth against thee Artaxerxes, the king of the Persians, with an untold horde of foes and strange races. For they are Parthians, Medes, Persians, Syrians, Mesopotamians, Brapes, Phares, Argiri, Chaldaeans,
 24 Bachiri, Confires, Hircanians, and Agiophii, and many other folks coming from Eastern lands.' On hearing this, Anectanabus said, sighing: 'The trust that I gave to thee, heed thou right well; yet thy prowess hath not been the prowess of a doughty
 28 man, but the doings of a cowardly fellow. For worth sheweth itself, not in the greatness of the folk, but in the steadfastness of their souls. Dost thou not know one lion putteth many

A lord of the Marshes tells him of the advancing myriads of foes and is chidden for his cowardice.

2 *Anectanabus's flight from the Persians. He greets Olympias.*

The king
sees his
further ill-
luck by
wizardry.

does to flight?' And having said these words, he went into his chamber alone, and made brazen shells, and filled them with rain-water, and held in his hand a palm rod, and gazing into this, began, as hard as he could, to utter spells, and beheld how 4 the Egyptians were being smitten down at the onslaught of the Barbarians' ships.

He fleeth
unto
Ethiopia
and from
Ethiopia to
Macedonia
and is
there a
soothsayer.

Forthwith he changed his dress, and shaved his head and beard, and took gold as much as he might bear, and which might 8 be needful to him to busy himself with wizardry. And thus he fled from Egypt, near by Pelusium. And at length, coming into Ethiopia, he put on linen apparel, [and] in the guise of an Egyptian seer went into Macedonia. And there he sate 12 himself, and before all the Greeks, and in their sight was soothsaying. But the Egyptians, when they saw how Anectanabus was not at Court, went to Serapis, who was their greatest god, and besought him that he might give them answer as to 16 Anectanabus their king. And Serapis replied: 'Anectanabus, your king, is gone from Egypt because of Artaxerxes, the king of the Persians, who will subdue you unto his lordship. Nevertheless, when a short time hath flown by, he will come back 20 to shake off his thralldom, and will be avenged on your foes, and yoke them under you.' And as soon as they had got this answer, they made a kingly statue out of a black stone, in honour of Anectanabus. And they wrote on it, at his feet, this 24 saying, that it might be handed down for their offspring to think of. But Anectanabus remained in Macedonia, nor was he known.

The
Egyptians
learning
his absence
get an
oracle why
he is gone
and when
he shall
come back
again
victorious.
They make
of him a
black stone
image.

HOW ANECTANABUS WENT UP TO THE PALACE TO OLYMPIA THE QUEEN.

Philip,
king of
Macedon,
being gone
to battle,
Anectana-
bus meeting
Olympia
greets her
and is
answered.

In the meantime, Philip, king of Macedonia, went out to 28 battle. But Anectanabus went forward to the palace, that he might behold Olympia the queen, and see how fair she was. And when he saw her, his heart was smitten with love of her, and stretching forth his hand, he greeted her, saying, 32 'Hail, Queen of Macedonia,' disdaining to call her 'lady'. And she, Olympia, answered him, speaking thus: 'Hail, master, come thou and sit near.' And when he sate thus, Olympia

asked many things of him. 'Art thou not an Egyptian?' And Anectanabus answered: 'The word thou saidst was kingly, when thou didst name the Egyptians. For the Egyptians are

And the queen hearing that he is an Egyptian asks him of many things.

4 wise, and read dreams, understand the birds of the air in their flight, open up the hidden places, and tell the fate of those new-born, babes. Of all these things, as a seer, I, too, have knowledge.'

And Olympia saw how he gazed upon her, and spoke, 'Master, of what dost thou bethink thee, who thus lookest on me?' And Anectanabus answered, 'I call to my mind many answers of the gods. One answer had been that I was to look upon a queen.'

He looks on her, and telling her of an oracle, shows the instruments of his sorcery.

And saying this, he drew forth from his breast a cleansing tablet of bronze and ivory, inwrought with gold and silver, and on its face were three whirls. The first contained in itself the Twelve Minds, and in the third, sun and moon were fashioned. Next to them, was seen a chain of ivory, and from it he

12 pulled forth seven wonder-bright stars, that told the hours and birth-dooms of men, and seven carven stones, and two stones for the saving men whole.

And Olympia beheld these things, and said: 'Master, if thou wouldst I should believe thee, tell me the year, the day and hour of the king's birth.' And upon this, he said to the queen, 'Wishest thou to hear nothing else from me?' Quoth the queen, 'Tell me what shall fall out betwixt Philip and me, for

20 men say that, when Philip shall come from the war, he will thrust me forth, and take another mate.' And Anectanabus answered: 'They prate of many things untruly; but ere a long time pass, it shall be as they say.' And the queen answered:

Olympia asks as to the king's birth; and as to what shall befall her, for men fore-tell evil.

28 'I beg thee, master, unveil me all the truth.' Thereupon Anectanabus:—'One of the mightiest gods shall share thy bed and uphold thee through all thy thrivings and downfalls, even if they be overstrung.' Olympia replied: 'I beseech thee, say what shape this god shall put on?' Anectanabus replied: 'Neither young, nor old; his beard besprinkled with white hairs. Wherefore, if this please thee, be ready for him, for at night shalt thou see him, and in thy sleep shall he lie by

32 thee.' The queen said: 'If I behold this, neither as a seer, nor as godly, but, as the god himself, will I worship' [thee]. And at once Anectanabus said, 'Fare thee well, O queen.' After this Anectanabus, leaving the palace, and walking straight forth

Anectanabus gainsays them and foretells that she shall be beloved and have the embraces of a god in man's shape.

Leaving
her he digs
up herbs
that he
may so
delude her.

And
having
dreamt
Olympia
calls him
to her, he
tells her
how to
enable the
god to come
to her first
seeming as
a snake.

She gives
him a
chamber in
the palace.

He lieth by
the queen
seemingly
as a god
and sealeth
her womb,
saying the
child shall
not be up-
braided for
his birth.

Thus
was she
cheated;
and was
with child.

But she, in
fear, asks
him how
to escape
Philip's
wrath.

Hecomforts
her and
through
wizardry
makes
King
Philip
dream a
god is
lying with
his wife
who, after,
seals her
womb,

to the city's camp in a desert spot, tore up herbs, and ground them, and took their juice, and wrought spells and other like things of the fiend, that in that same night Olympia might behold the god Hamon lying beside her, and saying to her 4 thereafter, 'Woman, thou hast conceived him who shall beshield thee.' And, on the morrow, Olympia awoke from her slumbers, and called Anectanabus to her, and told him of the dream she had beheld. Then Anectanabus said: 'If thou wilt give me 8 room in the palace, thou shalt see the god himself, face to face. For that god shall come to thee in the shape of a great snake, and soon after, taking on a manlike body, he shall seem to be in my likeness.' And to this Olympia said: 'As thou hast spoken, 12 master, do. Take to thyself a bed in the palace, and canst thou make good the truth thereof, I will deem thee to be the father of the boy.' And, about the first watch of the night, Anectanabus took on him, through spells and wizardry to be changed into 16 the shape of a great snake, and whistling on to the bedchamber of Olympia, to fly through. And he entered her room, and rose on to her bed, and with great love began to kiss her, and the kisses betokened to her who he was. And when he rose up 20 from the bed, he smote her on the womb, and spake: 'This begetting be thy avenging, and in no wise may it be upbraided of men.'

On such a fashion was Olympia cheated, who had lain with 24 a man as though he had been a god. And in the morning, Anectanabus went down from the palace, and the queen was with child.

And when she began to be big, she called unto her Anec- 28 tanabus, saying: 'Master, tell me, what doom will Philip wreak on me, when he shall come back?' And Anectanabus said to her, 'Be not afraid: god Hamon will champion thee.' And with these words he left the palace, and went outside the 32 town, to a barren spot. And, uprooting grasses, rubbed them, and grated them, and took their sap. And he caught a sea-bird, and began to sing over the herbs, and anoint the herbs with the sap. This he did in fellowship with the fiends, that he might 36 betray King Philip through a dream. And this was brought about. That same night the god Hamon appeared to Philip, in a dream, lying with his wife Olympia, and, the night ended, he

saw him touch her womb, and seal it with a golden ring. And on this ring there was a stone, and graven on this a lion's head, and the chariot of the sun, and a very sharp sword. And he
4 said to her: 'Woman, thou hast conceived thy saviour.' And Philip awoke from his sleep, and calling Arideus, made known to him the dream, and what he had seen. And Arideus said: 'Philip, not from man, but from a god, hath thy wife conceived.
8 In truth, the lion's head and the chariot of the sun and the sharp sword, foretold that he, who shall be born of her, shall journey to the East whence riseth the sun! And with the sharp sword shall he underyoke to himself the nations of the
12 whole world.'

telling her she has conceived hersaviour.
And awaking from the dream his seer reads him its meaning, and that the child shall be glorious.

HOW ANECTANABUS IN THE SHAPE OF A MIGHTY DRAGON
WENT TO THE FORE IN FRONT OF PHILIP AND OVERCAME
HIS ENEMIES IN THE FRAY.

In the meanwhile, King Philip fought and won. For there appeared in the battle a dragon, who went before him and laid low his foes. And when he came back to Macedonia, he met
16 and kissed Olympia. And King Philip gazed on her, and said, 'To whom, O Olympia, hast thou given thyself up. For sinned thou hast, yet not sinned, for as much as thou hast brooked frowardness from a god. But I have seen all that has
20 been done by a god on thee, in a dream: therefore be blameless in my eyes, and the eyes of all men!'

With the dragon's aid King Philip wins the fight, and coming back he speaks as in joke to his wife as to what has befallen her.

HOW ANECTANABUS IN THE SHAPE OF A DRAGON CAME
BEFORE PHILIP AT A FESTIVAL AND KISSED OLYMPIA.

On a certain day Philip was feasting with his lords and chieftains of Macedonia and with Olympia his wife. And
24 Anectanabus through wizardry took on himself the shape of a dragon, and, passing through the midst of the couch whereon they lay apart, whistled so loudly that all the revellers were stricken with fear, and the greatest dread, and coming near
28 Olympia, he put his head on her breast and kissed her. Philip, seeing this, spoke to Olympia, 'Woman, thee and all I tell; beheld this dragon, what time I laid my enemies low.'

At a feast Anectanabus comes to Olympia as a dragon and Philip tells the guests what has happened.

HOW A BIRD LAID AN EGG IN PHILIP'S BOSOM AT WHOSE
BREAKING THERE CAME FORTH A SERPENT, WHICH FORTH-
WITH DIED.

A bird lays
an egg
in King
Philip's
lap, which
breaking
gives forth
a snake,
which
before it
can go back
dies. His
sorcerer
reads him
its mean-
ing.

And a few days after this Philip the king was sitting in his palace, and there appeared unto him a little and most gentle bird, which flew into his bosom and laid an egg. And the egg, falling to the ground, was broken. And at once there crept 4 forth from it a very little snake. And it turned around, wishful to go into the egg, but, before it might put in its head, it was quenched. And Philip, seeing this, was heavily distressed, and called to him Arideus, and showed him the monstrous thing he 8 had seen. And Arideus said to him, 'King Philip, a son shall be born to thee, who shall reign after thy death, and shall fare forth over the whole world and sway all peoples, and ere he come back to the land of his birth, shall die by a most swift 12 death.'

The queen
is com-
forted by
wizarder
till the
child is
born.

And as the time of child-birth was drawing nigh, Olympia began to feel pain, and her womb was tormented, and she bade Arideus be called to her, and spoke with him: 'Master, my 16 womb is wrenched with very heavy labours.' Anectanabus [*sic in both editions 1489 and 1494*] then spake: 'Raise thyself awhile from thy throne, for in this hour the elements are troubled by the sun.' This was done, and the pain went from 20 her. And soon after, Anectanabus said to her, 'Sit down, O Queen!' and she sate herself and bore a child. And as soon as the boy was fallen on to the earth, a mighty thunderclap and thunderbolts, with tokens and lightnings came about through- 24 out the whole world. Then night was spread forth and lasted, it reaching unto the last hour of day. Then parts of the clouds fell down in Italy. And seeing these signs, Philip the king was afrighted, and went in to Olympia, and said: 'I deemed 28 that this little babe should in no wise be fostered. For he is not conceived of me, but of some god, for at his birth I beheld the heavens changed. Yet let him be fostered in my memory, as though he were my son, and follow in the stead of a son 32 I begot through another wife.' And when he said this, she handled the babe with great care. And the boy's face had the likeness neither of father nor mother. The hair on his head

Mighty
wonders
happen,
and Philip
is per-
suaded to
let the
child be
fostered
as though
he were his
own son.

was shaggy as a lion's. His eyes glistened like the stars, but each beamed with its own hue, one black, the other yellow. And his teeth were sharp, and his eager rush as a lion's. His shape foreshadowed his energy and forethought. By his parents he was called Alexander. In the schools, and wheresoever he sate, he strove with them in letters and disputations, and by his keen swiftness won the mastership. And when he was twelve years old, he was beweaponed for battle, and excelled in arms. And Philip, seeing how quick he was, praised him, and said: 'Son Alexander, I love thy speed, and wit of mind for its work. But I am sore and feel foolish that thy form is so unlike mine.' And Olympia heard this, and was greatly afraid. And she called hither Anectanabus, and said: 'Master, learn from me what Philip misdeemeth. For he said to Alexander, "Son, I love thy speed and wit of mind. But, that thy shape is unlike mine, I am saddened."' And Anectanabus began to think, and said: 'His thought is nowise harmful.' And gazing aloft as he was wont, he looked on a certain star, and riddled out his wish. And when Alexander heard this, he spake: 'The star thou seest is seen in the heavens?' And Anectanabus replied: 'My son, it is.' Alexander said: 'Canst thou show it unto me?' Anectanabus answered: 'Follow me in the hour of night, and I will show it unto thee.' Alexander said: 'Thy fate is not known to thee, or uncertain?' Anectanabus replied: 'Enough of this.' Alexander said: 'I would fain know it.' Anectanabus answered: 'In truth know that from my son shall come my death.' This said, as he went down from the palace, Alexander followed him in the hour of the evening without the city. And when they arrived up on to the ditch of the city, Anectanabus spake: 'Son Alexander, gaze thou on the stars; look how the star of Hercules is perplexed, and how Mercury's star is blithe. If I see Jove sparkling, my doom telleth me of my coming death at the hands of my son.' At this sight Alexander came up nigh to him, and made an onslaught on him, making him fall

The child is like neither father nor mother; his eyes are starlike, one black one yellow, his teeth sharp. He is called Alexander.

In the schools and at arms he excels all. Philip tells him how he loved him yet was grieved at his birth.

Olympia fearing tells this to Anectanabus, who says it is not harmful.

Anectanabus, being with Alexander, sees a star which when shown again, he announces to foretell his death at his son's hands. Alexander holding this a lie rushes against him.

[The early Text begins.]

36 down in to þe dyke, and thare he fette, & was all to-frusched; and þa ð Alexander said vn-to hym one this wyse. 'Fals

Leaf 1.
Anectanabus falls

into the
dyke and
Alexander
tells him it
is right
punish-
ment.

Anectana-
bus tells
Alexander
that he is
his own
son.
Alexander
reproaches
his mother.

wreche,' quop he, 'that presumeȝ to tell thynges þat ere to
com̄, reȝte als þou were a prophete, and knewe þe preuateȝ
of heuen̄. Now may þou see that þou lyeȝ, And þarefore
þou arte worthy to haue swilke a dede.' And than̄ Anectanabus 4
ansuerd; & said: 'I wyste wele ynoghe,' quop he, 'þat I scholde
die swylke a dede. Talde I noȝte lange are to þe, that myn̄
awen̄ soñ schulde slae me?' 'Whi, ame I thi soñ?' þan̄
quop Alexandire: 'ȝaa, for sothe,' quop Anectanabus, 'I gat the.' 8
And wit þat word; he ȝalde þe gaste. And than̄ Alexander
hert tendird̄ oñ his Fader, And he tuke hym vp on his bakke,
and bare hym to þe palace. And when̄ his moder Olympias
saw hym, Scho said̄ vn-till hym. 'Soñ,' quop scho, 'what 12
es that?' 'Als thi foly hase made it,' quop he, 'so it es.'
And than̄ he gert berye hym wirchipfully.

A Prince of
Macedonia
brings a
fierce horse
to the
palace
which the
king uses
to slay evil-
doers.

¹In the mene tyme, a prynce of Macedoyne broghte þe² kyng
a horse vn-temed; a grete and a faire; & he was tyed̄ oñ ilke 16
side wit chynes of Ireñ, for he walde wery men̄ and ete þam̄.
This ilke horse was called̄ Buktiphalas³, bi-cause of his vgly
lukyng, For he hade a heued̄ lyke a buſte, & knottifis in his
frount, as þay had bene þe bygynnyng of hournes. And when̄ 20
þe kyng saw þe bewtee of this horse, he said̄ till his seruandis,
'Takeȝ this horse and putteȝ hym in a stable, and makes barrez
of yreñ be-fore hym, that theſeȝ and oper mysdoers, þat sail̄ be
done to dede, may be putt in-till hym, to be slaen̄ of hym. 24
And þay didd̄ soo. In þe mene tyme þe kyng Philippe had̄
ane answee of his goddes, that hee schulde regne nexte after
hym, the whilke myghte ryde that wyld horse wit-owtteñ
harme. So it felle þat Alexander þe whilke was þan̄ twelue ȝere 28
alde, wexe strange & reȝte hardy, & was wysse and discrete;
for he was wele lered̄ & conmand̄ in all þe seuē sciēces,
þe whilke twa philosophirs had̄ teched̄ hym: þat es to say,
Arestotle & Calistene. And one a day, as Alexander passed̄ 32
for-by þe place þare als þe foresaide stode, he loked in be-
twene þe barrez of yrnne and saw, bifore þe horse, mens hend̄
and fete, & oper of paire membris, liggand̄ scatered̄ here &
thare, and he had̄ grete wonder þare-off. And he putt in his 36

King Philip
has an
oracle of
his gods.

Alexander
taught the
seven
sciēces by
Aristotle
and Calis-
thenes.

¹ Space for miniature blank, ten lines.

² a changed by scribe into þe.

³ Buktiphalas. In MS. a blot has

smudged out all the i except a dot, and
obscured the p, making it look like *Bukts-*
phalas, but it reads really as above.

- hande bitwene þe barrez, And þe horse * strekede oute his nekke,
als ferre als he myghte, and likked Alexander hand; and he
kneld^d douⁿ oⁿ his kneesse, and bi-helde Alexander in þe vesage
4 langly. And Alexander vnderstode wele þe wi^l of þe horse,
and opynd^d the barrez, and went into þe horse, and straked^d him
softely on þe bakke wi^t his ri^zte hand; And belyfe þe horse
wexe wonderly meke ti^l Alexander; and ri^zte as a honde wi^l
8 couche when^d his maister biddes hym, so dide he ti^l Alexander;
and Alexander lokede besides hym, & sawe a sadist & a brydest
hyng thare; and he tuke & dyd^d þa^m oⁿ hym, & leppe one his
bakke; & rade furthe oⁿ hym. And when^d the kyng Philippe
12 sawe hym do so, he said^d vn-ti^l hym 'Mi soⁿ Alexander' quop
he: 'Al^l þe ansuers of our godde^z are fulfillede in the! For
when^d I ame dede, þou moⁿ regne after me' And Alexander
ansuerd; & said^d 'I pray the, Fader,' quop he, 'ordeyne me horse
16 & meⁿ, for I gaa seke dede^z of arme^z.' 'For sothe' quop þe
kyng wi^t a glade chere, 'Take þe a hundreth horse, and
xl thosande^z pounde of golde; and take wi^t the of þe worthieste
knyghte^z þat lange^z to me, and wendis furthe.' And he didd^d so.
20 And he tuke wi^t hym also a philosophre þat highte Eu-
festius, whilke he traysted^d mekist in, And twelue childre þat
he chese to be his playfers, and went hym furthe, and come
in-ti^l a contreth þat es called Polipone. And when^d the
24 kyng of þe land herd^d te^l, þat swilke meⁿ ware entred^d in-to
his rewme in swilke araye, he raysed^d a gret Oste, and come
agaynes Alexander for to feghte wi^t hym. And when^d he
come nerehand^d hym, he said^d vn-ti^l hym. 'Te^l me' quop he
28 'whatt þou ert?' And Alexander ansuerd^d 'I am Alexander'
quop he 'þe soⁿ of Philippe, þe kyng of Macedoyne.' 'And
what hope^z þou þat I be?' quop þe kyng ti^l hym. And
Alexander ansuerd^d. 'þou ert kyng of Arridouns' quop he.
32 'Neuer-þe-lesse, if al^l I do þe þat wirchippe þat I calle
þe kyng, emprise þe nathynge þare-of. For meⁿ see^z ofte tymes
meⁿ þat ere in heghe astate co^m to lawe degree, & meⁿ þat
ere in lawe degree, come ti^l heghe astate.' 'þou sais ri^zte
36 wele' quop þe kyng. 'Take hede to thyⁿ aweⁿ selfe!' And
Alexander ansuerd^d & said^d 'Ga hethen away fra me' quop he
'for þou caⁿ say noghte to mee, ne I hafe noghte at do wi^t þe.'
And þaⁿ þe kyng was worder wrathe, And said ti^l Alexander

* Leaf 1 bk.

Alexander
sees Buce-
phalus.
Bucephalus
bows and
submits to
him.

Philip sees
Alexander
riding
Bucephalus
and says
the oracles
are ful-
filled.

Philip at
Alexander's
asking
gives him
arms and
men to
invade
foreign
territory.

Alexander's
encounter
with the
King of the
Arridons.

They quar-
rel fiercely.

* Leaf. 2

The king challenges Alexander. Alexander accepts, and they both go home to gather forces.

'Luke on me' * quop he 'pat spekes to the: Fore I swere the be my Fader hele, & I anes spitte in thi face, pou schale dye.' And wit pat he spitte at Alexander, & said: 'Take þe þare, pou biche whelpe, þat þe semez till hafe.' And Alexander 4 stepped furthe, & said vn-till hym. 'For þou' quop he 'hase dispised me, by-cause I ame littill; I swere þe, bi þe pete of my Fader, & by my moders wambe, in þe whilke I was consayued of godd Amōn, þat pou schalt see mee, are oughte lange, in 8 þi rewme, redi to feghte wit þe; and owþer I schalt wyn thi rewme wit dynte of swerd; & brynge it vnder my subieccionn, or þou schalt make me subiecte vn-to þe.' And þare þay assignede day of Batelle; and ayther of þam went hame fra 12 oþer.

Alexander gathers his army, meets King Nicholas and slays him after the fight.

¹ And agaynes þe day of Batelle, Alexander, bi ascent & ordynance of kyng Philippe, gadird a grete Oste, & went to the place þare þe Batelle was assigned, and fand all redy þare, 16 kyng Nicoll and his oste. And þay trumped vp appon bathe þe parties, and bigan to feghte, & many men ware slaen on bathe þe sydez. Bot at þe laste, Alexander hade þe felde, & tuke kyng Nicholl, & gart smytte of his heued; & went in-till 20 his land, and conquered it; and his knyghtes went and coround hym kyng þare-off. And sythen he went hame till his fader, kyng Philippe, and fand hym sittand at the mete at a bridale: For he had put away fra hym his wyfe Olympias, Alexander 24 moder, and takeñ hym an-oþer þat highte Cleopatra; And Alexander went in-to þe haufle, and said vn-to þe kyng Philipp: 'Fader,' quop he, 'I pray þow, þat for a rewarde of my firste iournee þat I hafe now made, þee graunte me to take 28 my Moder Olympias agayne vn-to þow, & do to hir as awe to be done to a qwenne², rather þan I gyffe hir to anoþer

On his home-coming, he finds his father at bridal with a new wife, and begs him to take Olympia back again,

lest Alexander, giving her to another king, be his foe. One Lesias jeeringly foretelling that Cleopatra shall bear Philip an heir,

kyng; so þat I be noȝte þoure enemy for euer. For this weddyng, þat þe hafe now made here, es vnleful!' Whē 32 he hadd said thir wordes, ane of þe þat satt at þe kynges burde, whase name was Lesias, ansuerd & said to þe kyng: 'lord' quop he 'þou schall hafe a soñ of Cleopatra, and he schalt regne after þe!' Alexander, than, was gretly greuede at his 36 wordes, and wit a wardrere þat he hade in his hande, he went

¹ Place for miniature blank, twelve half-lines.

² MS. *qwenne* with *e* inserted above text.

- till hym and kellede¹ hym. When kyng Philippe sawe this, he was gretly stirred, and rase vp, & gatt a swerde * & ranne to-wardez Alexander, for to hafe smytten hym. Bot onane
- 4 he felle down; and ay þe nerre Alexander þat he drewe, þe mare he felle to the erthe riȝte as he bene ferd. And þan Alexander said vn-till hym: 'Philippe' quop he 'how es it soo, that þou, þat hase wonn wit dynt of swerde alle Grece,
- 8 ne hase now na strenghe to stande on thi fete.' And þan all þe haulte was troubled, and the brydale letted. And Alexander went abowte þe haulte, and keste douñ þe bourdez wit þe mete, & þe drynke þat ware appon þam, and tuke
- 12 Cleopatra, and schotte² hir oute at þe haulte dore. And the kyng Philippe, for sorowe þat he tuke till, felle grefe seke. And a littill afterwardez, Alexander went till hym for to vesett hym & comforthe hym, and said vn-till hym 'Philippe,'
- 16 quop he, 'if all it be noȝte semely, þat I calle þe be þi propre name; neuere-þe-lesse, noȝte as þi soñ, bot as þi gud' frend', I sañ tesse the myñ avice. It es fully my consaile þat þou reconnselle agayne vn-to the my lady,
- 20 my Moder Olympias, and at þou grefe þe na-thinge at þe dede of Lesias, ne take na heynes to the þare-fore. For vn-kyndely me thynke þat þou didd, and vngudely, þat þou drewe þi swerde for to smytte me þare-wit.' And when Philippe
- 24 herd þir wordes, his hert tendird, & he bigane to wepe. And þan Alexander went till his Moder Olympeyas, and said vn-till hir: 'Be noȝte ferde' quop he 'ne be noȝte heuy to my fader, for if alle thi trespas be preuee, & noȝte knawen, neuer-þe-lesse
- 28 þou erte in party to blame.' And when he hade sayde thus, he ledd' hir furthe to þe kyng Philippe. And he tuk & kyssid hir, and thus was scho reconnselde vn-till hym agayne.
- ³After þis, þare come messengers Fra Darius, þe emperour
- 32 of Perse, to kyng Philippe, and asked hym tribute. And Alexander answerd to thir messengers, & saide, 'Saise to Darius, þour lorde,' quop he, 'þat señ þe tyme þat Philippe soñ was waxen of age þe hen þat ay es waxen barayne & consumed'

Alexander slays him.
* Leaf 2 bk.

King Philip having in vain sought to kill Alexander, Alexander upsets the feast and casts out Cleopatra.

King Philip having fallen sick, Alexander goes to be reconciled with him.

Philip weeps and Alexander brings him and Olympia together again.

Messengers come from Darius the Emperor of Persia, to whom Alexander refuses the

¹ The first vowel is either a *y* changed into *e*, or an *e* changed into *y*. Hence it is uncertain if *kyllede* or *kellede* was written first. I think *kyllede* was first written and changed to *kellede* from the link with

next letter.

² MS. seems certainly when magnified to write *o*, *schotte*, although it is blotted.

³ Space left for miniature, eleven half lines.

wonted tribute.

Armenia rises, Alexander subjugates it.

* Leaf 3.

Pansamy, a lord, covets Philip's wife and kingdom; he revolts and wounds king Phillip to the death.

Alexander comes back in the midst of the troubles and his mother goes to meet him.

Pansamy goes forth to meet Alexander, but Alexander slays him.

awaye, and so es Darius pryuede of his trybute.' And [when] thir messengers herd thir wordes; þay hade grete wounder of þam & of þe witt & þe wisdom of Alexander.

In þe mene tyme tythynges come to kyng Philippe, þat Ermony, 4 þe whilke bi-fore was suget vn-till hym, was rebelle & raysse agaynes hym. And he garte *semble a grete Oste, and sent Alexander thedir þare wit to feghte wit þam, and to putt þam agayne vnder his subieccion. Alexander than went wit this Oste 8 till Ermony & broghte it agayne in subieccion, as it was bi-fore.

An in þe mene tyme, whils he was þare, a lorde of Macedoyne þe whilke highte Pansamy, a strange man & a balde, suget vn-to Philippe, and hade of lange tyme couette for to hafe þe quene 12 Olympias, conspirede agaynes þe kyng, and come with a grete multytude of folke appon þe kyng, to for-do hym. And when tythynges here of come to kyng Philippe, he went to mete hym in þe felde wit a fewe men. And when he sawe þe grete multi- 16 tude þat Pansamy hade wit hym, he turned & fledd, and Pansamy persued after hym, and ouerbied hym, and strake hym thurghe wit a spere, and ȝitt ife all he were greuously wounded, he dyed noȝte alson, bot he laye halfe dede in the waye. And than 20 þe Macedoynes, þat wenede he hade bene dede, made mekiff sorowe. And when þis iournee was done Pansamy was gretly empridede þare offe, & went in to þe kynges palace for to take þe quene Olympias oute of it and hafe hir with hym. 24 And euen þe same tyme, Alexander come fra Hermony, & sawe¹ swylke trouble & styrrynge in the rewme, and hyed hym faste towarde þe kynges palace, and when Olympias herd tesse þat Alexander hir soñ had þe victorie of his enemys, 28 & was comande nere, Scho went furthe of þe palace at a preuee posterne to mete hir soñ, and to welcome hym hame. And alson als scho come nere hym, scho criede appon hym & said.

'A A, my son Alexander, whare es þe grace & þe fortune 32 þat oure goddes highte the, þat es to say, þat þou scholde alwaye ouercome thyñd enemys & noȝte be ouercomen, þat Pansamy hase one þis wyse slaen thi Fader.' And alson the worde come to Pansamy þat Alexander was comen, and he 36 went furthe of palace for to mete hym. And also faste als Alexander sawe hym, he oute wit a swerd and clafe his heued

¹ MS. blotted at *sawe*.

in to þe tethe, & slewe hym. And ane of þe Oste said^t tiff
Alexander: 'Philippe þi fader' quop he, 'lyes dede in þe
felde.' And þan Alexander went thedir thare he laye, and
4 saw hym euēd at þe dyinge. And þaū he begaū faste for to
wepe. And Philippe loked apoū hym, & said: 'A A, my dere
son Alexander,' quop he, 'wit a glade hert [I] may now dye,
for þat þou so sounē hase venged^t my dede,' & euēd wit * þat
8 worde he ȝalde þe gaste. And Alexander wirchipfully gert
hym be entered^t.

Alexander
is told of
his father's
dying
state. He
goes to him
and hears
his last
words.

Philip dies.
* Leaf 3 bk.

¹ When kyng Philippe was entered, Alexander went and sett
hym in his trone, and gerte calle by-fore hym alle þe folke þat
12 was gaderd^t thedir, lordes & oþer, and said^t vn-to þaū on þis
wyse. 'Meū,' quop he, 'of Macedoyne of Tracy, and of Grece
byhalde; þe fegure of Alexander and putte; oute of ȝour
hertes drede of alle ȝour enemys. For sekerly, and ȝe wiłt take
16 gude hertis to ȝow, thurgh þe helpe of oure goddis he schaff hafe
þe ouerhande of all ȝoure neghtebours, and ȝour name schaff
spred^t ouer alle the werlde. And þare-fore ilkane of ȝow þat
hase Armour, makes it redy, and he þat hase nane come to my
20 palace & I sall gerre delyuer hym all þat hym nedis, and ilk
a maū make hym redy to þe werre.' And wheū þe lordes and
knyghtis þat ware of grete age, herd^t thir wordes þay ansuerd^t
Alexander, & said^t vn-tiff hym: 'lorde,' quop thaye, 'we hafe
24 seruede ȝoure fader a longe tyme & traueled^t wit hym in his
werres, & þare-fore we ere now so bryssed in armes þat þare
[es] no myghte lefte in vs for to suffre disesse þat oftēd tymes
falles to meū of werre. For we ere strekēd in grete age. And
28 þare-fore, if it be plesynge vn-to ȝow, we consaile ȝow & we
beseken ȝowe, that ȝe chese ȝow ȝong lordes & ȝong knyghtes,
þat ere listy meū & able for to suffre disesse for to be wit ȝow.
For here we giffe vp att armes if it be ȝour wiłt & forsakes
32 þaū for euer.' And þaū Alexander answerd^t & said: 'I wiłt
rather,' quop he, 'chese þe sadnesse of an alde wyse maū than
þe vnavesy lightenesse of ȝonge meū. For ȝong meū often
tymes traystand^t to mekiſt in thaire awenū doghtynes thurgh
36 þaire awenū foly ere mescheued^t. Bot alde meū wirkes all by
consaile & by witte.' Wheū he had said thir wordes all meū

After
Philip's
burial,
Alexander
calls his
folk to-
gether and
harangues
them.

He foretells
to them
their rule
over the
world, and
bids them
get ready
their wea-
pons for
war.
But those
of great
age beg
leave that
they
should not
be made to
go on new
wars, but
rather the
younger
men.

Old men
work with
wisdom,
young men
with bold-
ness and
rashness.

¹ Twelve half lines space for miniature in MS.

They allow
and con-
sent to his
words.

allowed his hie witte and hally pay assentede to hym for to do his lyste.

* Leaf 4.

Gathering
an army,
Alexander
ships to
Italy, first
taking
Chalcedo-
nia.

He takes
tribute of
the Ro-
mans and
of all
Europe as
far as the
West
Ocean.

¹ Sone after Alexander assemblede a grete Oste, & went bi Schippe to-wardez Ytaly, and als he come by Calcedoyne, he ⁴ assaylled it rehte strangly, and þe folke of Calcedoyne * went to þe walles of þe Citee and defendid manly. Bot at the laste Alexander wañ the Citee, and fra thethyn he Schippede in-till Italy. And alsone als þe Romaynes herd of his comynge ⁸ þay were wonder ferde for hym, and the grete lordes of þe lande take fourty thowsandez of besandez and ¹⁰ corounes of golde, and went vn-till hym, and present hym wit þam & bysoughte hym þat he scholde nohte werrey appon þam, ne ¹² do þam na harme. And than Alexander take trybute of þe Romaynes, and of alle the folkes þat duelt bitwixe that & þe weste Occeane, þe whilke regione es callede Europe, & leste þam in gude pesse. 16

Thence
sailing to
Africa he
subjugates
it.

² Fra thethyn he Schippede in-till Affrice, in thee whilke he fande bot fewe þat rebelled agaynes hym and parefore als [men] swa saye, euē sodeynly he conquerid it & broghte it vnder his subieccion. And fra Affric he went by Schippe till ane ²⁰ Ile, þat es called Frontides, for to consaile wit a godd þat þay called Amon. And as Alexander & his meñ went to-wardez þe temple of þis for-said godd, þay mett in þe waye a grete hert þe whilke Alexander bad his meñ sla wit arowes. And ²⁴ þay schott at hym; bot nane of þam myghte hitt hym. And þam Alexander take a bowe & schotte at hym & hitt hym & slewe hym. And þam Alexander went in-to þe temple, & made sacrafyce of þis hert vn-to godd Amon, and by-soughte ²⁸ hym þat he schulde gyffe hym ansuares. Wheñ Alexander hade made his prayers pare to godd Amon, he went wit his Oste in-till a place þat highte Taphoresey, In þe whilke were seftene ³ gude townnes, & þay hade twelue grete reuers þat rane in-to ³² þe see, and at þe entree of þam in-to þe see þare was drawen ouer grete chynes of yryne, and thare Alexandir made Sacrafice till his goddez. And on þe same nyghte, a godd þat [hight] Serapis apperid vn-till hym in his slepe, cledd in riche ³⁶ clothyng in ane horrible forme & a dredesuff, and said vn-till

The adven-
ture with
the hart.

He sacri-
fices to
Amon,
praying
the oracle.

He goes to
Taphoresey
and sacri-
fices to his
gods.

The Vision
of Serapis.

¹ Three lines miniature S.

² Five lines miniature F.

³ MS. has xv crossed through before
seftene.

hym. 'Alexander,' quop he, 'may þou take þis montayne on þi schulder & bere it a-way?' Quop Alexander, 'how myghte any mañ do þat?' And Serapis ansuerd & said, 'righte as þis
4 montayne sañ neuer wit-owten *end be remowed hethen, so thi name & thi dedes schall be made mynde of to the worldes end.' And than Alexander prayed hym þat he walde prophycye hym what kyns dede he scholde die. Serapis ansuerd and said, 'It
8 es noghte spedfull tiñ a man to knawe his paynefull endyng. For if he knewe it, peraunture, he scholde neuer hafe loye in his hert. Neuer þe lesse bi-cause þou hase prayede me to telle þe, I sañ say the. After a drynke þou schall take thi dede.
12 For in thi youthe þou sañ make thyñ endyng. Bot spirre me noþer þe tyme ne þe houre when it schal be, For I wiñ on na wyse telle it to the. For-whi goddez of þe este partiez of þe werlde sañ telle the alle thi werdez.' When Alexander
16 wakkened of his dreame, he was reghte heuy, and sent þe maste substance of his Oste to þe Cite of Askaloñ and bad þañ habide hym thare, and hym selfe & a certane of menze wit hym habade & thare he garte make a Citee & called it Alexander
20 after his awenñ name.
¹In the mene tyme þe Egipcyens herd of þe comynges of Alexander, & pay went agaynes hym & submytt þañ vn-tiñ hym & resayffed hym wirchipfully. And when Alexander come
24 in-tiñ Egipte, he fand ane ymage of a kyng made of blake stane curiously corueñ, and he askede þe Egipcians whase ymage it was, and pay ansuerd & said, 'It es þe ymage,' quop pay, 'of Anectanabus that was kyng of Egipte nozte lange sythen
28 gane, þe wyseste & þe worthiest þat euer was þare-iñ.' For sothe quop² Alexander, 'Anectanabus was my Fader.' And þan he knelid douñ with grete reuerence & kyssed þe ymage. Fra thethyñ he went wit his Oste to Surry. But þe
32 Surriens agayne-stude³ hym and faghte wit hyñ and slewe many of his knyghtes. Neuer þe lesse Alexander had þe victorie. And þañ he went to Damaske, & Ensegged it & wanne it, and fra thethyñ he went to Sydon & wan it.
36 And þañ he went vnto þe Citee of Tyre and layde Ensegge abowte it, and [in] þis Ensegge he laye many a day. And thare

* Leaf 4 bk.

Serapis foretells him his lasting fame, his deeds, his death. But of some things Serapis may not speak.

Alexander awakens saddened. He sends his main strength on to Askal. Where he was he founded the city of Alexandria.

The Egyptians hearing of his coming submit. He sees the image of Anectanabus.

He acknowledges Anectanabus as his father.

He invades Syria, takes Damascus, Sidon, and sets about the siege of Tyre.

¹ Five half lines space for miniature I.

² quop Alexander in margin.

³ Scribe wrote *agaynesande* and altered it to *agaynestude*.

Tyre resists
stoutly,
and he has
to set a
boom
across the
haven.

* Leaf 5.

Alexander
sends for
help to Ja-
dus, Bishop
of the Jews,
and also
demands
tribute.

The Bishop
pleads the
oath of
fealty
sworn to
Darius.

Alexander
swears to
wreak ven-
geance on
the Jews.

He sends
Melager
with 500
men to
Josaphat
to forage.
They de-
feat the
Lord of the
country
and slay
him.

But the
Lord of the
city sends
help and

his Oste suffred many dysesse3. For þat Cite was so strange
in it-selfe by-cause of þe ground, þat it was sett apon, and
by-cause of grete towres & many þat ware abowte it, and also
bicause it was so enclosed wit the see þat it myghte noghte 4
lightly * be wouned by name assawte. Alexander þan vmbi-
thoghte hym, one what wyse he myghte best com to for to
destruy þis citee, and he gerte make a grete bastell of tree, and
sett it apon schippes in þe see euen forgaynes þe cete, so þat 8
þare myghte no shippe3 come nere the haven for to vetaille
þe Citee or suppoell it wit men by-cause of þe bastelle. In
þe mene tyme Alexander Oste hade grete defawte of vetaylls,
and þan he sent lettres vnto Iadus, þat at that tyme was 12
bischope & gouernoure of þe Iewes, and prayede hym for to
suppoell hym wit som men, and also þat he walde send sum
vetails for hym & his Oste, and he scholde pay for þam wit
a glade chere, and þat he scholde also send hym the tribute 16
þat he scholde gyffe Darius þe emperour of Perse. For hym
ware better, he said, hafe his frenchippe þan þe frenchipe of
Darius. The Bischope þan of þe Iewes ansuerd þe messangers
þat broghte hym þe lettres & said, 'I hafe,' quop he, 'made 20
athe to Darius, þat, whils he leffe3, I schall neuer bere armes
agaynes hym, and þarefore I ne may no3te do agaynes myn
Athe.' The Messagers þan went till Alexander & talde hym
þe bischopes ansuere, and he was greued & said, 'I make myn 24
avowe,' quop he, 'vntill oure goddes, þat I schall take swilke
vengeance on þe Iewes þat I sall make þam to knawe, whethir
it es better to þam to be obeisant vn-to [my?] commandement,
or vn-to þe kynges of Perse.' And he callede a duke, þat highte 28
Melagere, and wit v men of armes, and badd þam gaa in to þe
vale of Josaphat, þe whilke was full of beste3 & brynge of thase
beste3 to þe Oste for to vetaille þam wit. And ane Sampson,
þat knewe þe cuntre wele was paire gyde. Pay went in to þe 32
vale, and gadird to gedir catell wit-owte nombir & be-gan for
to dryfe on þam. And he þat was lorde of þe cuntre, Theosellas
bi name, rayسد a grete multitude of folke and mett þam &
faughte wit þam & slewe many of þam. Bot Melagere & his 36
felaws at þat tym had þe better. And ane þat highte Caulus
went baldly to Theosellas, & smate of his heued. All this was
done bot a littill fra þe citee of Gadir. And þan Bertyne,

lorde of þe citee, seand' this, was gretely stirrede and ischewed
 owte of þe citee & wit xxx feghtyng men and sett vp a schowte
 apoū the * Macedoynes alle at anes, that alle þe erthe trembled
 4 wit-alle. And' when þe Macedoyns saw that grete multytude
 of folke com̄ appoū þam̄, þay were reȝte ferde. And þan
 Melagere walde hafe sent a Messangere to þaire lorde Alexander,
 for to come & socoure þam̄, bot he mygte fynd' na mañ þat
 8 walde vndertake þe Message. Than thir twa batalles met
 Sameñ & faughte to-gedir, and there was Sampson slaen,
 and Bertyne. And þe Macedoyns wit þe grete multitude of
 þaire enemys ware dreueñ abakke, and lyke for to be dreueñ
 12 abakke & discomfites. And ane of þe grekkes, þat highte
 Artes, seyng þe meschefe pay stode In, wann̄ hym owte of the
 Bataile & went in alle þe haste, þat he myghte, tilf Alexander
 & talde hym þat þe Grekkes & þe Macedoynes ware in poynte
 16 to be mescheuede, bot if he suppoellde þam̄ þe tittere. And
 than Alexander lefte þe segge of Tyre, and went wit his
 Oste to þe vale of Iosaphat, and fand' his men̄ riȝte harde
 by-stadde wit þaire enemys. And he and his Oste vmbylapped
 20 alle þaire enemys, and daunge þam̄ doun & slewe þam̄ ilke
 a moder soñ. And when he had so done he turned agayne
 vn-to Tyre, and fande the Bastelle, þat he hade made in þe See,
 dongeñ doune to þe grounde. For alsoñ als Alexandere was
 24 gane fra Tire to þe vale of Iosaphat, Balañ þat was lorde of
 Tyre ischewid' oute of þe citee wit thee folke þare-of, & assailed
 the bastell manfully, and tuk it & dange it doune. And when
 Alexander sawe that, he was gretly angerde, and his hert
 28 wonder heuy, and so ware alle þe Macedoynes and the Grekes.
 In so mekiñ thay ware nerehand' in dispeire for to wyñ þe
 citee, and ware in poynte to hafe riffen¹ up þe segge. And
 one þe nyghte nexte suande, Alexander, als he laye & slept,
 32 dremyd' þat he hadd' in his hand' a grape, þe whilke hym
 thoghte he keste downe vnder his fete, and trade þare-one,
 & alsone þare rañ oute of it a grete dele of wyne. And when
 Alexander wakned, he called tilf hym̄ a Philosophre & talde
 36 hym his dreame. And þe Philosophre ansuerde, 'be balde,'
 quop he, ' & lefe noȝte to ensegge Tyre, for þe grape þat pou

the Macedonians
 are driven
 back.

* Leaf 5 bk.

One of the
 Greeks
 sends for
 help to
 Alexander,
 who, leav-
 ing the
 siege of
 Tyre, out-
 flanks the
 enemy of
 Josaphat
 and slays
 them all.

Alexander,
 returning
 to Tyre,
 finds his
 boom
 thrown
 down, for
 Balan had
 sortied
 with all his
 people. So
 despairing
 are the
 Greeks
 that they
 almost give
 up the
 siege.
 The next
 night Alex-
 ander
 dreams a
 dream and,
 when his

¹ MS. riffen, perhaps for jiffen, but the same idiom is found elsewhere.

Philoso-
pher in-
terprets it,
he is
cheered.

helde in thi hand, and keste vnder thi fete, and trade pare-one,
es þe Citee of Tyre, þe whilk þou sail wynn thurgh strenth
and trede it with thi fote, and pare-fore be na-thinge abaiste.⁷
When Alexander herd thire wordes, he was gretly comforted, 4
and vmbithoghte hym one whate wyse he myghte gette this
Citee.

* Leaf 6.

He makes
another
boom on
ships
higher
than the
highest
city tower.
He directs
his men
how to at-
tack.

And than he * garte make another bastelle in þe see, grettere,
& hyere, and strangere þan þe toper was. For it was hiere 8
þan þe hegheste towre of þe citee. And þis bastelle was tyede
wit a hundrethe ankers. Þan Alexander gert armede hym¹
suerey & wele, & wente by hym ane vp upon this bastelle, and
badd all his men þat þay schulde make þan redy for to feghte 12
& to giffe assawte to þe citee. And alsone als þay sawe hym
entire in to þe citee, þay scholde all at anes presse to þe walles,
and scale þan, and clymbe ouer þe walles baldely & wyn þe
citee. And when all men weren redy, hee gerte smyte 16
sunder þe cabillis þat þe bastelle was tyed wit, & þe wawes
of þe see bare it to þe walles of þe Citee. And Alexander
delyuerlye stert upon [þe] walles, whare Balan stode, and ran
upon hym & slew hym and keste hym ouer þe walles in-to 20
þe dyke of þe citee. And when þe Macedoyns & þe Grekes
sawe Alexander entir in-to þe citee, þay schouffed to þe walles
all at anes, and clambe ouer, sum wit leddirs sum on oper wyse
wit-owtten any resistence. For þe Tyreyenes was so ferde by- 24
cause of þe dedde of Balan paire duc þat þay ne durste noghte
turne agayne ne defende þe walles. And on this wyse was þe
citee taken and dounen doune to þe erthe.

Cutting the
cables he
lets the
towers over
the boom
float in up-
on the city.
He, climb-
ing the
walls, slays
Balan, and
his follow-
ers rush all
at once in-
to the city.
Tyre is de-
stroyed.

Alexander
takes Gaza
and
marches on
Jerusalem.

The Bishop
of the Jews,
hearing
this, calls
the Jews
before him,
and orders
fasting,
prayer, and
sacrifice.

An Angel

Fra þe segge of Tyre Alexander & his men went to þe citee 28
of Gaza and assailed it, & wit schorte while þay wan it. And
Fra thethynd hyed hym towardez Ierusalem for to ensegge it.

² Qwhen þe Bischope of þe Iewes herde telle þat Alexander
was commaund toward Ierusalem, he gert call bifore hym all 32
þe iewes þat ware in þe citee, and talde þan þe tythynges þat
ware talde hym. And sythen he commandid þan þat þay
schuld com to þe temple, and be pare in praynge Fastynges
and wakyng & in sacrafice makyng vn-to godd, bisekand hym 36
of helpe & socoure. And þay did soo. And on þe nyghte nexte

¹ The *y* of *hym* for *hym* is written over
another letter scratched out.

² Twelve half lines space with miniature
of a Q.

after, when þe Bischope hadd' made his sacrafice, and was
 lyand' in prayers, he fell on slomeryng and ane Angelle appered'
 vn-till hym, and sayd, 'Be noȝte ferd,' quop he, 'bot swythe
 4 gere araye honestly all þe stretis of (þe) citee, and caste open
 the gates, and warne all þe folke þat þay aray þam in whitte
 clethyng, and thi-selfe & alle þe prestis reuestez ȝow solempnely,
 and to-morne arely wendeȝ furthe of þe citee agaynes Alexander
 8 in processioun. For hym by-houez * regne & be lorde of alle
 þe werlde. Bot at þe laste þe wrethe of godd' sail falle apou
 hym.' When þe bischope wakened' of his slepe, he called' till
 hym þe iewes and talde þam his reuelacioun, and bad þam do
 12 all als þe Angelle hade schewed' hym. And þay did' so. For
 þay 'arayed' þe streteȝ of þe cetee and cledde þam in whitte
 clethyng, and the bischope & þe prestis reueste þam, and
 bathe thay and alle þe folke went furthe of þe citee till a place
 16 whare þe temple & all þe citee may be seen. And þare þay
 habade þe comyng of Alexander. And when Alexander come
 nere þis foresaid place, and sawe be-for hym swilke a multitude
 of folke, cledd' alle in whitte, and þe presteȝ arayed' solempnely
 20 in riche vestymentis, and þe byschope also in his pontyfcales
 and a mytir one his heued', and þare-apou a plate of golde,
 whare-one was wretyn þe name of grete godd' Tetragramaton, he
 commaunded all his men þat þay schulde halde þam by-hynd'
 24 hym, and habyde till he com to þam. And he lighte off his
 horse, and went bi hym ane to þe iewes, And knelid' down to
 þe erthe and wirchippede þe hye name of godd', þat he saw
 þare wretyn apou þe bischopes heued'. And þam alle þe iewes
 28 knelid' doum & saluste Alexander and cried all wit a voyce:
 'lyff lyffe,' quop þay, 'grete Alexander, lyffe, lyffe the gretteste
 Emperour of þe werlde, lyffe he þat sail ouer-com all men and
 noȝte be ouercome. Prynce maste glorious and maste worthy
 32 of all þe princeȝ þat regnez apou erthe.' When þe kyngeȝ of
 Surry saw þis, þay hadd' grete wonder þare-off. And a prynce
 of Alexanders, þat highte Parmenon, said' vn-till Alexander:
 'Mi lorde þe Emperour,' quop he, 'we mervelle vs gretely þat
 36 þou, wham all men wirchipeȝ and lowteȝ, wirchipeȝ here þe
 bischope of þe Iewes.' And Alexander answered, 'I wirchipe
 noȝte hym,' þis quop he, 'Bot Godd', whase state he presentez.
 For when I was in Macedoyne, and vmbithoghte me, on what

of the Lord
 appears by
 night to
 the High
 Priest and
 shows him
 how the
 city may
 be freed—
 and utters
 a prophecy.

* Leaf 6 bk.

The Bishop
 awakens,
 and, doing
 as the
 Angel bids,
 he and his
 people go
 forth to
 meet Alex-
 ander, the
 folk in
 white, the
 Bishop in
 full Ponti-
 ficals.

Alexander,
 seeing
 them, dis-
 mounting,
 kneels and
 worships
 the Name
 of God.

Alexander,
 being
 asked, tells
 them that
 he wor-

ships not
the High
Priest but
God, and
this be-
cause of a
vision pro-
mising him
the con-
quest of
Darius.

He goes
into Solo-
mon's Tem-
ple and
sacrifices.
The Bishop
shows him
the pro-
phesy of
Daniel.

* Leaf 7.

The Bishop
of the Jews
asks that
the laws of
their
fathers
might be
granted.

Alexander
conquers
the rest of
Judaes.

Darius
asks the
fugitive
Syrians as
to what
kind of
man Alex-
ander was.
They show
him a
parchment

wyse I myzte conquere Assye, I saw hym slepand, in swilk habite & in swylke araye; and he lete as he sett nozte by me, bot went baldely furthe bi me. And for I see nane¹ in swilke arraye bot hym, I suppose it be he pat I saw in my slepe. 4 And pare-fore I trowe pat thurgh þe helpe of Godd' I saff ouercom̄ Daryus, þe kyng of Perse, and his grete pryde fordo. And all thynges þat I caste in my hert fo[r] to do, it es my full triste þat thurgh his helpe I saff fulfil it, and wele bryng 8 it to end. And pis es þe cause I wirchipped hym.' And when̄ he hadd' said' thies wordes, he went in-to þe citee wit the bischope & þe presteȝ, and went in-to þe temple pat Salamoñ made. And as þe bischope teched' hym̄ he offred' 12 sacrafice vn-to Godd'. And þe bischope tuke Alexander in hande a buke of þe prophieye of Daniel*, in þe whilke he fandē wretyn̄, þat a mañ of Grece sulde distruy þe powere of Perse². And Alexander was reghte gladde, supposynge þat 16 it was hym-selfe. And þañ he gaffe þe bischoppe & þe oper presteȝ grete gyfteȝ & riche & precyous, And badd' þe bischope ashe of hym what so he walde. And the bischope askede þat he walde giffe þañ leue to vse þe same lawes þat paire 20 faderes vsed' bifore þañ, and he graunted' it. And þañ þe bischoppe askede þat³ walde giffe þe Iewes þat ware in Medee & in Babyloyne, leue for to vse paire lawes, & he graunted' hym þat & all oper thynges þat he walde aske. 24

⁴ Alexander thañ went fra Ierusalem, & lefte thare Andromac his Messagere, and hym selfe & his Oste went to þe oper citeȝ þat ware in þe lande of Iudee, and at ilke a citee þat he come to, he was wirchipfully ressayued'. In þe mene tyme þe 28 Surryens þat fledd' fra Alexander, went to Perse, and talde þe emperour Darius how Alexander hadd' done to þañ. And Darius spirred' thaym̄ of his stature & of his schappe, and þay schewed' hym purtrayed' in a parchemyn̄ skyn̄ þe ymage of 32 Alexander. And alsone als Darius sawe it, he dispysed' Alexander bycause of his littill stature, and be-lyfe he gerte

¹ MS. *see nane* twice over: 'see nane, see nane.'

² A more open handwriting begins most clearly after *Perse*.

³ Supply *he* between *þat* and *walde*.

⁴ Eleven half lines space for a minia-

ture which is lacking. A square is roughly drawn out, and in the square the words '*hic incipit*' scribbled. Beside the miniature in the margin is written '*rex equitans*.'

write a lettre and sent it till Alexander. And *pare-wit* he sent hym a handbañt & oper certane lapez in scorne. And pis is þe tenour of þe *lettre* þat he sent till hym.

portrait and he despises him for his short stature.

Darius writes to Alexander, telling him how he has heard of his band of thieves and robbers, and that they could never overcome the power of Persia.

* Leaf 7 bk.

He tells Alexander of his meanness and wretchedness who wishes, like some mouse crept out of her hole when the cat is gone, to dispart him in the broad lands of Persia. But Darius shall pounce upon him when least awaited.

It were a great gift to leave him Macedonia alone, under tribute. He had better go home to his mother's knee. He sends him a play ball as more beseeching him.

- 4 ¹ 'Darius, kyng of kynges, and lord of all erthely lordes euen like vnto sonne schynande, wit þe goddez of Perse, vntill Alexander oure *seruand* we send. We haue vnderstanden now on late, whare-of we meruelle vs gretely, þat þou cert so raysed
- 8 in *pride* and vayne glorye, þat þou hase semblede togedir a company of robbours and thefez oute of þe weste parties, and castez þe for to com̄ in-till oure parties, supposynge thurgh þam̄ for to ouer-sett and constreyne þe grete myghte & þe
- 12 vertue of þe *percyens*, whase strenghte þou may neuer sloken̄ ne ouercome, suppose þou gadirde & sembled togedir all þe werlde. For I do þe wele to wiete þou myghte nerehand' alsonne nommer þe *sternes* of heuen̄, as þe folke of þe empire of Perse. Oure
- 16 goddez also ², * by whayn̄ all þis werlde es gouerned & sustened, praysez & commendeþ oure name passyng all oper nacyns. 'Bot noȝte wit-standynge pis; þou as a littill bisne & a dwerge, a halfe mañ & ortez of alle meñ, desyrand to ouer-
- 20 passe þi littillnesse, rizte as a mouse crepez oute of hir hole, so þou ert cropen̄ out of þe lande of Sethym̄, wenyng wite a few rebawdez to conquere & optene þe landez of Perse brade & lange, & to ryotte & playe the in thayn̄ as myesse douse in þe house
- 24 whare na cattes ere. Bot I þat priually hase aspied thi gatez, when̄ þou wenez moste seurely for to stertle abowte, I sail sterte apoū þe & take þe; & so in wrechidnes sail thi dayes fouly hafe an̄ ende. 'A grete Foly þou dide for to take apoū the
- 28 swylke a *presumpeyon*. It ware full faire to þe, if þou myghte bi oure lese, wit oure beneuolence, ocupie all anely þe rewme of Macedoyne, zeldynge *parefore* till vs zerey a certane tribute, if all þou couetid noȝte oure empire. *Parefore* it es gude þat
- 32 þou lese thi fonned *purposse*, and wende hame agayne, and sett the in thi moder knee. And lo, I sende the here a littill bañle, wit þe whilke als a childe þou may play the. For þou ert bot a childe. It es mare semely þat þou vse childez gammez þan
- 36 dedez of armes. 'We knawe wele thi pouert and thi nede, and

¹ Four half lines and miniature D with a king's head within.

² At bottom of leaf 7, first side, are

written in large characters indistinctly
... *kychyn ys att a Rio* ...

Does Alexander dream of subduing the rich Empire of Persia. He advises him to return home again or he will send a force to hang him as a thief on a gibbet.

The messengers deliver Alexander the ball and the letters. His knights, hearing it read, are astounded and cast down.

* Leaf 8. Alexander consoles his men with the hope that what Darius says of the wealth of Persia may be true, and he exhorts them to fight for it manfully.

He bids his knights bind the messengers and lead them forth to be hanged. They lead them forth thus, but the messengers beg for mercy. Alexander tells them why he

pat pou hase vnnethes whare wit pou may sustene thi caytyfde corse. Wenez pou, than, to brynge vnder thi subieccion the empyre of Darius. I say the by my Fader saule, pat in the rewme of Perse *pare* es so grete plente of golde, pat, & it were 4 gadirde to gedir on a hepe, It schulde passe þe clerenes of þe soñ. Wharefore we commande the, and straitely enioyneþ the, pat pou leue thi fole pride and thi vayne glory, & tourne hame agayne to Macedoyne. And if pou wilt nozte soo, we sañ sende 8 to þe a multitude of meñ of armez swilke ane saw pou neuer, þe wilke sañ take þe, and hyngþ þe hye oñ a gebett as a traytour and a mayster of theefez: and nozte as þe son of Philippe.'

¹ When þe messangers pat were sent fra Darius come to 12 king Alexander, þay gaffe hym the *lettres*, and þe batle & oper certane Iapes, pat þe emperour sent hym in scorne. And Alexander tuke þe *lettres*, and gert rede it openly by-fore alle meñ, and Alexander knyghtes when þay herde þe tenour of þe 16 *lettres* were gretly astonayde and wonder heuy. And when Alexander sawe þañ so heuy by cause of þe *lettre*, he saide vn-to þam: 'a a, my worthy knyghtis,' quop he, 'are 3e fered for þe prowde wordez pat are contened in Darius *lettres*, wate 3e 20 noghte wele pat hundez, pat berkes* mekill, byteþ meñ noghte so sone, als doeþ hundes pat commez one meñ wit-outten berkyngþ. We trewe wele þe *lettre* says sothe of some thyngþ, pat es to² saye, of þe grete plentee of golde, pat Darius sais he 24 hase. And þarefore late vs manly feghte wit hym and we sañ hafe þat golde. For þe grete multitude of his golde, als me thyinke, schulde gare vs be balde and hardy for to fighte wit hym manly.' 28

When Alexander had saide thir wordez he bade his knyghtis take the messangers of Darius and bynd þaire handez bi-hynde þañ, & lede þañ furthe to the galowes, & hyngþ þañ. And þay tuke þe messangers & bande þañ, and began for to lede 32 þam furthe to þe galowes-warde, and þañ þe messengers bigañ for to crye rewfully vntill Alexander & sayd: 'A, A wirchipfañ lorde & kyngþ', quop þay, 'whate hafe we trespaste, pat we schaffþ be haungede for oure kynges dedis'. And þañ kyng 36 Alexander ansuerd: 'þe wordez of 3our Emperour', quop he, 'gers me do þis, þat sent 3ow vn-to me, as vnto a theeffe, as þe

¹ Five half lines space with a miniature W.

² to in margin of MS.

lettre whilke 3e broghte witnessez': 'A, A lorde', quop pay, 'oure emperour sent¹ thus to 3ou: for 3our powere & 3our myghte was unknawwen vn-till hym. Bot we be-seke 3ow late3
4 vs gaa, and we schall mak aknawen vntill hym 3our grete glory, 3our ryaltee, & 3our noblaye.'

pañ kyng Alexander badd² his knyghtis lowse pañ, and bryng pañ in-till his hauffe, to þe mete. And thare he made
8 pañ a grete feste & a ryaff. And as pay satt at the mete, þir messangers saide vn till Alexander, 'lorde,' quop pay, 'if it be plesynge to 3our hye maiestee sende3 with vs a thowsand of doghty meñ of armes, and we sall delyuer pañ þe
12 Emperour Darius,' and Alexander ansuerde agayne & said² 'Sittes stille', quop he, '& makes 3ow mery. For I tell 3ow in certayne, for þe betrayinge of 3our kyng, I will noghte graunt 3ow a knyghte wit 3ow'. Apon þe morne,
16 Alexander gart write a lettre vn-to Darius, whareoffe þe tenour was this.

will hang them. They promise to make known to Darius Alexander's real character. King Alexander, loosening them, bids them come to meat. They propose to Alexander that they should deliver Darius into his hands. He scornfully rejects it.

þe letter of Alexandere³

⁴ Alexander, the soñ of Philippe & of qwene Olympias, vn-to Darius, kyng of þe land þat schynes⁵ wit þe godde3 of Perse,
20 we sende. If we graythely & sothefastly be-halde oure selfe þat es na thyng þat we here hafe þat we may bi righte casse ours, bot all it es lent vs for a tyme. For alle we þat ere whirlede aboute wit þe whele of fortune, now ere we broghte
24 fra riches in-to pouerte: now fra myrthe & ioy in-to Sorowe & heuynesse; and agaynwarde3: and now fra heghte, we are plungeded in-to lawnesse. Pare-fore þat es sett in hye degre triste to mekill in his hyennesse, that, thurgh
28 pride & vayne glorye, he schulde despyse þe dedis of oper meñ lesse * þan he. For he wate neuer how sone þe whele of fortune may turne abowte, and caste hym doune to lawe degre, þat sitte3 hye on-lofte: and rayse hym to hye wirchiþe and
32 grete noblaye þat bifore was pore and in lawe degre. And þarefore the aughte to thyнке grete schame, þat swilke a worthy emperour as meñ halde3 the, schulde sende swylke

Alexander, writing, reminds Darius of the unsteadfastness of earthly wealth. No man of high degree should scorn those lower, for he never knows when the wheel of Fortune may turn about.

* Leaf 8 bk.

Therefore Darius should be ashamed that he, a great

¹ sent in margin of MS.

² & said in margin.

³ The rubric is wrongly placed in the MS. after *dignyte3*, p. 24, i.e. at the end of

the letter.

⁴ Five half lines with miniature A.

⁵ *schynes* in margin of MS.

man, behaves
so to Alexander,
a little
man.

The Undying
Gods do not
associate with
men that die.

Alexander
comes as a
mortal man to
fight Darius.

Even if Darius
overcome

Alexander he
shall win nothing
by it, for
he is but a
little man and
a thief.

Darius's boasts
of the Persians
of old have
heartened
them to attack
the Empire.

The play ball
that was sent
was also a
forecast of his
rule over the
world.

The other
toys like-
wise fore-
tell his rule
over all

men. By
the same,
Darius has
sent tribute
to
Alexander.

a message vnto me so littill a mañ and so pore. For þou ert
euen lyke to þe sonne, as thi selfe says, sittande in þe trone of
Nitas wit þe goddez of Perse. Bot goddez þat euermare are
liffaunde & neuermare dyez, deyneþ nozte for to hafe þe fela- 4
chipe of dedely meñ. Sekerly I am a dedely mañ; and to þe
I come as to a dedely man, for to feghte wit the. Bot þou þat
arte so grete & so gloryous & calleþ thi selfe vndedely, þou sañ
wynne na thyng of me, if aße þou hafe þe ouerhande of me. 8
For þou hase ouercommen bot a littill mañ, and a theeffe³ als
þou sayse. And if I hafe þe ouerhande ouer the, It sañ be to me
þe gretteste wirchipe þat euere byfeli me, for als mekill als I sañ
hafe þe victorie of þe worthieste emperour of þe werlde. Bot 12
þare þou saide, þat, in þe rewme of Perse, es so grete plentee
of golde, þou hase scharpede oure hertiz, and made mare
balde for to feghte with the, & for to wynne þat golde; for
to relese oure pouerte wit-añ, & putte awaye our nede whilke 16
þou says we hafe. In þat also, þat þou sent vs a hande-baße
and oper barne-laykaynes, þou prophicyed rihte, and betakend^t
bi-fore, thynges þat we trewe, thurgh goddez helpe, sañ faste
vn-till vs. By þe rowndenes of þe baße, we vnderstande 20
all the werld^t aboute vs, þe whilke sañ faste vnder oure subiec-
cion. Bi þe tane of þe laykanes þat þou sent vs, þe whilke es
made of wandez and crukeþ donwardez at þe ouerend^t, we vnder-
stand þat all þe kynges of þe werlde, and aße þe grete lordez, 24
sañ lowte till vs. Bi þe toper laykan, þat es of golde, and
hase apon it, as it ware, a mannez hede, we vnderstande þat
we sañ hafe þe victorie of aße meñ and neuer be ouercommen.
And þou þat ert so grete & so myghty hase now onwardez sent 28
vs trybute, in als mekill als þou sent vs a handbaße, and þir
oper thynges þat I rehersed by-fore, the whilke contenez in
þam so grete dignyteþ.

¹ When þis lettre was wreten, Alexander called till þe mes- 32
sangers of þe Emperour of Perse, and gaffe þam riche gyftes
and betuke þam þe lettre, and badd^t þam bere it to þaire lorde.
And þam Alexander sembled^t his Oste, and by-gañ for to wende
toward Perse. When the messangers of Perse come to þe 36
emperour þay talde hym of þe grete ryaltee of kyng Alexan-
der * and tuke hym the letters þat Alexander sent hym. And

The letter
is taken to
Darius. He
then
marches on
Persia.

* Leaf 9.

Darius, re-
ceiuing

¹ Four half lines space with miniature W.

pe emperour garte rede þamð. And when he herd þamð redde he was wonder wrathe, and sent a *lettre* belyue vn-till twa grete lordez that hadd þe gouernance of þe empire vnder hym
4 sayand to þam on this wiese.

Alexander's letter, writes to his two great lords,

1 'Darius kyng of kynges and lorde of lordes vntill oure trewe legeþ *Primus* & *Antyochus*, gretynge and ioy. We here tell þat Alexander, Philippe sonne of Macedoyne, es so heghe raysede in
8 pryde, þat he es rebeſte agaynes vs, & es commen in-till *Asye*, and hase destroyed it vtterly. And ȝitt hym thynke noȝte this ynoghe, bot he *purposeþ* hym for to come nere vs, and do þe same till *operre* cuntreþ of oure empire as he hase done tyll
12 *Asye*. Wherefore we comande ȝowe o payne of ȝour legeance, þat ȝe ſemble þe grete meñ & þe worthy of oure empyre, wit *oper* of our trewe legeþ; and, in all þe haſte þat ȝe may, gaſe & counters ȝone childe, takand hym, and bryngand hym bi-fore
16 oure *preſence*, þat we may laſche hym wele, als a wanton childe ſchulde be: and clethe hym in *purpoure*; & ſo ſend hym till his moder *Olympias* wele chaſtyede. For it ſemeȝ noȝte to be a feghter: but for to vſe childe gammeȝ.

telling them of Alexander's boldness and bidding them take him prisoner so that Darius may whip him as a naughty child and send him home to his mother.

20 2 Thire twa lordes *Primus* and *Antyochus*, when þay hadde redde this *lettre* of þe emperour, þay wrate agayne vntill him on this wyſe. 'Vn-to Darius, kyng of kynges, grete godd, *Primus* & *Antiochus*, ſeruyce þat þay kañ do. To ȝour heghe
24 maieste we make it aknawenð, þat þe childe *Alexandere*, whilke ȝe ſpeke off, hase all vtterly diſtroyed ȝour cuntree. And we ſembled a grete multytude of folke, and faughte wit hym; bot he hase diſcomfit vs, and we were ſayne for to flee. For un-
28 nethe myghte any of vs wyne awaye wit þe lyfe. Pare-fore we þat ȝe ſay ere helpers vnto ȝowe, beſekeȝ ȝour hye maiestee that ȝe ſend ſumð ſocoure till vs ȝour trewe leges.' When Darius hadde redde þis *lettre*, pare come anoper meſſanger
32 till hym and talde hym þat Alexander and his Oſte hade lugede þam appon the water of *Strume*. And when Darius herd þat he wrate anoper *lettre* vntill Alexander, of whilke þis was þe tenour.

Primus and *Antiochus* reply, telling of their utter defeat at the hands of Alexander and begging for help.

Darius is told of the camping of Alexander on the river *Strume*.

36 3 'Darius, kyng of kynges, and lorde of lordez, vn-till oure ſeruande Alexander. Thorowte all þe werlde þe name of

Darius writes again to

¹ Space for four lines.

³ Four half lines and space with a minia-

² Miniature and M space for four lines. ture D, with king's head within.

Alexander
telling him
to retire
before his
vengeance
fall upon
him.

* Leaf 9 bk.

He sends
him also a
token of
the num-
ber of his
own people.

They bring
Alexander
the letter.
But he
finds
another
meaning
for the
tokens.
He hears of
the heavy
sickness of
his mother.
Altho' cast
down by
the news
he writes a
letter to
Darius.
He tells
him that
for other
reasons he
is forced
unwilling-
ly to re-
turn, but
bids him
not put it

Darius es prayse^d & commende^d. Oure goddez also hase it wreten^d in thaire bukes. How thaⁿ durste þou be so balde, for to passe so many waters, and seez, Mountaynes & craggez, for to werraye agaynes oure royalle maiestee. A grete wirchip^r 4 me thyne it * ware to þe, if þou myghte mawgre oures, hafe in possessioun þe kyngdome of Macedoyne all anely, wit-owtten mare. Thare-fore the es better amend^d þe of thi mysededis, þan we take swilke wreke appon^d the, þat oþer men take bisne þare- 8 by, seⁿ alle þe erthe wit-owtten oure lordchipe, may be callede wedowe. Torne agayne þare-fore, we consaile þe, in-to thyⁿ awen^d cuntree, are oure wrethe and oure wreke falle apouⁿ þe. Neuer-pe-lesse, þat oure wirchippe & oure grete noblaye 12 be sumwhate knaweⁿ to þe, we sende the a malefull of chesseboffe sede, in takennyng þare-of. Luke if þou may nombir & telle all þir chesseboffe sede, & if þou do þatt þaⁿ may þe folke of oure oste be nowmer^d. And if þou 16 may nozte do þat oure folke may nozte be nowmer^d. Þare-for turnee hame agayne in-to þi cuntree and lese þi foly þat þou hase byguⁿ, and take na mare apouⁿ þe swilke a presumpcion, for I tell þe we haffe men of armes wit-oute 20 nowmmere^r.

¹ When þe Messengers of Darius come til^t Alexander, þay tuk hym þe lett^re and þe malefull of chesseboffe sede. Alexander þaⁿ gerte rede þe lett^re. And sythen he putt 24 his hand in þe male, and tuke of þe chesseboffe sede & putt in his mouthe, & chewed it, & said, 'I see wele', quop he, 'þat he hase many men, bot þay are rizte softe as this sede are'. In þe mene tyme þare come a Messenger til^t Alexander fra 28 Macedoyne: and talde hym þat his Moder Olympias was grefe seke. And [when] Alexander herd^r þis, he was wonder heuy. Neuer þe lesse, he wate vn to Darius a lett^re, þat spakke on this wyse.

² Alexander þe son^d of Philippe & of qwene Olympias vn-to Darius kyng of Perse, we sende. We do þe wele to wiete þat we hafe herde certane tythynges, whilke gers vs agayne, oure wil^t do þat we now saⁿt saye. Bot trow þou nozte þat we 36 for fere or dowte of thi pride and þi vayne glorye turne hame agayne now til^t oure awen^d cuntre, Bot all anely for to vesett

¹ Four lines space with miniature W.

² Three lines space.

oure Moder Olympias, whilke lygges grefe seke. Bot wete þou wele, wit in schorte tym̄, we schaff haste vs agayne, wit a grete nowmere of fresche knyghtis. And rizte als þou sent vs a
 4 malefult of chessebolle sedeȝ; so we sende þe here a littill peper. For þou schulde witte þat rizte as þe scharpenes of þis littill peper passeȝ þe multitude of þe chessebolle sedeȝ, rizte so þe grete multitude of þe Persyenes saȝ be ouer-comien wit a fewe
 8 knyghtis of Macedoyne.'

¹ This *lettre* be-kende Alexander to þe knyghtis of Darius, þe peper also, & bad þam bere þam to þe emperour. And he gaffe þam grete gyftes and riche, and sent þam furthe.
 12 And þam he turnede * agayne wit his Oste towarde Macedoyne.

There was þe same tyme a wonder wyse maȝ of werre þe whilke highte Amorca, and he was prynce-werres in Araby, and lay þare wit a grete multitude of meȝ in awayte of
 16 Alexander & his Oste. And when he herde tell of þe commyng of Alexander, he redied hym for to kepe hym. And when þay mett, þay faught to-geder all þe daye fra þe morne til þe euen. And so þay dide all þase thre deyes. And þare was so mekill
 20 folke dede in þat bataile, þat þe sone wexe eclipte & wit-drewe his lighte, vggande for to see so mekill scheddyng of blude. Bot at laste þe Percyenes ware so thikke-falde felled to þe grounde, þat þaire prynce Amorca turned þe bakke & fledȝ,
 24 and vnnetheȝ myghte wynn awaye, and a fewe wit hym. So hastily fledȝ Amorca, þat he come nerehand alson to Darius, as his messagers did þat come fra Alexander, and fand Darius haldand þe *lettre* in his hande, þat Alexander sent hym,
 28 and spirrande what Alexander did wit þe chessbolle sedeȝ. And þe messagers ansuerd & said: 'He tuke of þe chessbolle sedeȝ', quop þay, 'and chewed of þam, & said: I see wele,' quop he, 'þat Darius hase many meȝ, bot þay are wonder softe';
 32 And than Darius tuk of þe peper, þat Alexander sent, and putt in his mouthe and chewed it. And when he felide þe strenghe of it, and þe grete hete, he syghede sare, and saide: 'Alexander knyghtis', quop he, 'are bot fewe, bot and þay be
 36 als strange in þam selfe, as þis peper es in it selfe, þay saȝ fynde nane in þis werlde þat may agaynestande þam.' And þan ausuerde Amorca & saide, 'Forsothe, lorde', quop he, 'ȝe

down to his own vainglory or pride. He shall come again with a fresh host. And he sends him in return a little pepper.

He dispatches Darius's messengers back with the letter.

* Leaf 10, Amorca tries to ambuscade Alexander.

They fought three whole days till the sun grew dark with dread, seeing the number of the slain. So many of the Persians were slain that at last Amorca had to flee.

He fled so quickly to Darius that he found him reading Alexander's letter. Darius sighs at the sharpness of the pepper.

¹ Five lines space with miniature A.

Alexander's humility and courtesy to his fallen foes.

His further march.

Alexander sacrifices to the Sun in Phrygia.

* Leaf 10 bk.

Alexander answers a flatterer, he had rather be a wise man's disciple than have the praises of Achilles.

Alexander marches again towards Persia.

The citizens of Abandria shut their gates against him. But

say sothe, Alexander hase few knyghtis, bot þay ere strange, þat hase slaen my knyghtis þat ware so many, so þat¹ vnnethez myghte I eschappe owte of þaire handez.' Alexander, if alle² he hade þe victorye of his enemys, he bare hym neuer 4 þe hiere þare-fore, ne empridede hym nozte þare-of. Bot bathe Percyenez & the Macedoyns þat ware slaen, he gert brynge to beryell. And þan he come wit his Oste in-to Cecill, whare many Citez submyt þan, vn-till hym, and of that rewme, 8 þare went wit hym: xvij. M. feghtyng meñ. And fra thethyñ he come till Ysaury, þe whilke, wit-owtten any agayne standyng, was 3olden vntill hym. And Alexander went vp apou þe Mounte Taurus, and fande þare a citee þat meñ callede 12 Persypolis, and thare he tuk wit hym a certane of meñ of Armes, and went so thurgh Asye, and wañ many Citez. And so he come in-to Frigy, and went in-to þe temple of þe son, and thare he made sacrafyce to þe son. Fra thethyñ, he come 16 to a reuere, þat es called Stamandra, and þare he said till his men. 'Blyste mote 3e be',* quop he, 'þat hase getyñ þe comendacions & þe praysyngez of þe gude doctour Homerus', and aue of his meñ ansuerde & said, 'Mi lorde kyng', quop 20 he, 'Me thyñke I may sauely writte ma praysyngez, & lonynges of the, þan Homerus did of þan þat distruyede þe Citee of Trayane. For þou hase done in þi tyme ma wirchipsuff thynges, þan euer did þay.' And Alexander [ansuerd,] & said, 24 'Me ware leuer,' quop he, 'be a wyse manes disciple þan for to hafe þe lonynges of Achilles.' After this he remouede wit his Oste into Macedoyne, & fande his Modir Olympias wele couerd of hir sekenes, and suggournede þare wit her a while. 28 And than he ordeyned hym for to wende agayne into Persy, And keste hym for to logge at a Citee, þat meñ callez Abandryan. The meñ of þe Citee, when þay herde telle of his commyng, þay sperede þe 3ates of þe Citee, and wachede þe citee 32 one ilke a syde. And when Alexander saw þat, he went & assailede þe Citee. And þe burgez of þe Citee, when þay sawe þat þe citee was nozte strange ynoghe of þe selfe, for to agaynstande þe assawte of þaire enemys, þay criede till 36 Alexander & saide: 'Kyng Alexander,' quop þay, 'we spered'

¹ 'þat' almost blotted out by stain in MS.

² 'alle' almost blotted out by same stain as above.

noȝte þe ȝates of [the] citee to þat entent for to agaynestande
the, Bot allanly for þe drede of Darius, kyng of Perse, þe
whilke as it was tolde tiȝt vs, es purposede for to send' his
4 meñ hedir, for to destruye vs & oure citee.' And þañ Alexander
said' vnto þañ agayñ. 'Iffe ȝe wiȝt,' quop he, 'þat we distruy
ȝow noghte, openez ȝour ȝates, and when I hafe made an ende
wit Darius, þañ saȝt I come agayne, & speke wit ȝowe.' And
8 þañ þe Citazenes opened þe ȝates. Fra thethen þay went to
Commoliche. And fra thethyñ to Bihoy, and so to Caldiple.
Syne þay come¹ tiȝt a grete reuere, whare Alexander Oste hadd'
grete defaute of vetaȝis, and þañ his knyghtis murnede gretely
12 and said, 'Oure horses,' quop þay, 'faylez vs ay mare & mare.'
Alexander ansuerd, & said, 'A A, my doghty knyghtis,' quop
he, 'þat ȝitt heder-towardeȝ hase in werrez suffred' many
peritts & mekitt disesse, ere ȝe nowe in despeyre of ȝour hele
16 for þe failynge of ȝour horseȝ, Saȝt we noȝte gete horseȝ ynowe,
and we lyffe & hafe qwert, and if we dye we saȝt hafe na nede
of horse, na þay may do us na prophete. Haste we vs pare-fore
in all þat we maye to þe place whare² we saȝt gete horseȝ wit-
20 owtenñ nowmer, and vetaȝis also, bathe for oure selfe & for oure
horseȝ.' When he hadd' all saide, þay went furthe and come tiȝt
a place þat es called Luctus, þat es to saye wepynge,*³ whar þay
fande vetaȝis ynoghe, and mete ynoghe for paire horse. Fra
24 thethyñ þay remoued' & come tiȝt a place þat hatt Trigagantes,
and pare þay lugged' þañ. And Alexander went in-to a temple
of Apollo; whare als he aghteled' to hafe made Sacrafice, and
hafe hadd' ansuere of that godd' of certane thynges þat he walde
28 hafe aschede. Bot a woman þat hiȝte ȝacora, whilke was preste
of þat temple, talde Alexander þat þañ was noȝte þe tyme of
ansuere. On þe Morne Alexander come to þe temple & made
his sacrafice. And Apollo said' tiȝt Alexander, 'Hercules,'
32 quop he. And Alexander ansuered, & said, 'Now þat þou
callez me Hercules,' quop he: 'I see wele þat all thyñ ansuers
ere false.' Fra thethyñ Alexander went till a citee þat es called'
Thebea, and said vn-to þe folke of þe citee: 'Sendez me furthe,'
36 quop he, 'foure hundreth knyghtis, wele armed', for to wend wit

fearing
him they
tell him
that they
had done
so to with-
stand Da-
rius. And
they open
their gates.

Alexan-
der's
knights
complain
that their
horses are
failing
them.
Alexander
exhorts
them to
endure to
the end.

* Leaf 11.

Alexander
gets a lying
answer of
Apollo,
who calls
him Her-
cules.

Alexander
calls on
the The-
beans to

¹ MS. *went* crossed through by the scribe,
and replaced by *come* in MS. itself.

² *whare* corrected from *pare* in MS.

³ On leaf 11 a more regular, orderly, and
distinctive handwriting begins in the MS.

send him
help. But
they, re-
fusing,
shut their
gates.

Alexander
jeers at
them.

He sends
four thou-
sand arch-
ers to shoot
down the
watches on
the wall,
two hun-
dred
miners to
mine the
walls, a
hundred to
burn down
the gates,
and four
hundred
engineers
to batter
the walls
in. Him-
self with
the rest lay
by to help
them when
necessary.

The story of
Cicesterus
and His-
mon.

* Leaf 11
bk.

Alexander
refuses
mercy to
the city,
and raises
it to the
earth.
Clitoma-
rus, one
of the
citizens,
fares away
with the
conque-
rors.
The The-
beans ask

vs in suppoellyng of vs.' And when þe Thebeans herd thir wordeþ,
pay spered þe zates of þe citee, for to agayne-stande *Alexander*,
and went to þe walles, and cried lowde þat *Alexander* myghte
here: '*Alexander*,' quop þay, 'bot if [þou] gaa hethyð fra vs, we 4
saß do the a velany, & thi knyghtis also.' When *Alexander*
herde this, he smyled & saide: 'þe Thebeens,' quop he, 'þat ere so
mekill praysed & commended of strenghe, Spere þe þour zates
& saise þe wiß feghte wit me; þare es na doghety mañ of armeþ 8
þat coueteþ for to haue wirchip and loos; þat wiß close hym
witin walles, bot fightes wit his enemys manly in þe felde.'
When he hadd saide thir wordeþ, he bad þat foure thowsandeþ
archers sulde gaa abowte þe citee wit þaire bowes, & lay apou 12
þaū wit arowes þat stode apou þe walles. And he bad two
hundreth men of armes ga to þe walles, and myne þaū doune,
and a hundrethe he bad take fyrebrandeþ, & gaa to þe zates
& brynne þaū. And he ordeynde oper foure hundreth men, 16
for to bett douñ þe walles wit Sewes of werre, Engynes and
Gonnes & oper maner of Instrumenteþ of werre. And hym selfe,
and þe remenant of þe oste lay nere þaū to socour þaū wheñ
þay hadd nede. And belyfe fra þay hadd gyffend assawte to þe 20
citee, þe zates ware brynt, & mekill folke was slayne witin
þe citee, Sum wit arowes, sum wit stanes of Engynes; þe Fire
also by-gañ for to sett in houseþ wit-in þe citee, & rayse a grete
lowe. In þe Oste of *Alexander* was, þe same tyme, a mañ þe 24
whilke highte *Cicesterus*, a grete enemy to þe citee. He, wheñ
he sawe þe citee bryne, made righte mery.* Bot a mañ of the
citee þat highte *Hismon*, wheñ he saw his cuntree þusgates
be distrayed, come and felle one knees be-fore *Alexander*, and 28
bigañ for to synge a sange of Musyke & of murnyge wit an
Instrument of Musike, Supposyng þare-by for to drawe *Alexan-*
ders herte to Mercy, & styrre hym to hafe rewthe on þe citee.
Alexander be-helde hym, & sayde: 'Maister,' quop he, 'whare- 32
to syngeþ þou me þis sange?' 'A A lorde,' quop *Hismon*, 'to luke
þife I myzte styrre þi herte to hafe mercy ouñ þe citee.' And
þaū *Alexander* was wonder wrathe, and bad dyng þe walles
of þe cetee douñ to þe harde erthe. And wheñ þay had so done 36
þay remoued & went þaire way, and ane of þe worthieste men
of þe citee, þe whilke hyghte *Clitomarus*, went wit þaū in
company. Bot þe Thebeens þat ware leste astire þe birnyng

of þe citee went to þe temple of Apollo, and askede weper euer
mare paire citee sulde be repaireld agayne. Apollo ansuerde,
& said, 'he þat schaff bygge þis citee agayne saff hafe thre
4 victories. And when he hase geten thre victories, he saff
onane come & repairell this citee, and bigge it agayne, also
wele, als euer it was.'

an oracle of
Apollo as to
whether
their city
should ever
be rebuilt.
The answer
is, it shall
be rebuilt
by a three-
fold victor.

Alexander
is invited
to a wrest-
ling.

He asks
who will
begin.

Clitomarus
begs the
favour of
so doing.

He wins
once.
Alexan-
der's prom-
ise.

He wins
twice.
He wins
thrice.
Crowning
him they
ask him
his name.

He
answers,
'One with-
out City.'
How it be-
fell with
his answer.

* Leaf 12.

From
Corinth
they go to
Platea and
the Tem-
ple of
Diana.
The maid-
en Priestess

¹ Alexander fra þe citee of Thebe, went to Corynthe, and þare
8 come till hym certane lordes, prayand hym þat he walde come
& see a wrestillynge. And he graunted þam. And to þis Ilke
wrestillynge þare come folke witowtten nowmer. And when
all men were gadirde, Alexander saide: 'whilk of 3owe,' quop
12 he, 'saft gaa & be-gyn þis playe'. Clitomarus þam, of whayn
I spake bifore, knelid bi-fore þe kyng, & saide: 'lorde,' quop
he, '& 3e wolle vouche-saffe to giffe me leue, I will be-gyn'.
And Alexander bad hym ga to. And Clitomarus went in-to þe
16 place, and þe firste man þat come in his hande, at the first
tourne he threwe hym wide open. And Alexander said vntill
hym: 'Caste thre men,' quop he, '& þou saft be coround'.
Þam þare come anoþer man to Clitomarus and vnnethez he come
20 in his handez, when he was caste wyde open. And one þe
same wyse he seruede þe thirde. And þan Alexander gart sett
on his heuede a precious coround, and þe kynges seruaunder
spirrede hym what his name was. 'My name,' quop he, 'es wit
24 owtten citee'. When Alexander herde þat he saide vn-till
hym: 'Thou noble wristiller,' quop he, 'whi arte þou callede wit
owtten citee.' 'Wirchipfull emperour,' quop he, 'be-fore þat 3e
werede þe emperours Dyademe, I hadde a citee full of folkez
28 & of reches. Bot now, sene 3e come to this astate & þis
dignyte, I am spoylede & priuede of my citee.' And when
[he] herde this, he wiste wel þat he ment of þe citee of
Thebe. And þan he garte his sergeantez * make a crye that
32 [he] hadd giffen Clitomarus leue for to repairelle þe citee
of Thebes. Fra Corinthe, Alexander and his oste remowed till
a citee þat highte Platea, of þe whilke a man þat highte Scras-
geras was prynce. And Alexander went to þe temple of Diane,
36 and fande þare a woma prest, þe whilke was a mayde, & scho
was araied lyke preste of pat tymme. And when [scho] sawe
Alexander, scho saide vn-till hym: 'Alexander,' quop scho, 'þou

¹ Five half lines space with miniature A, with knight within.

and her
prophecy.

Scras-
sageras
curses the
priestess,
but it
avails him
nothing.

He falls
from his
Lordship
and flees to
Athens, and
prevails on
them to
help him.

Alexander
marches on
Athens.

The letter
of Alex-
ander to
the Athe-
nians, tell-
ing of his
deeds and
conquests.

He asks of
them but
ten philo-

arte welcomme. Pou schaff conquere all þe werlde.' One þe morne Sc rassageras went to þe same temple, and alsone als þe preste sawe hym, scho saide vn-till hym: 'Sc rassageras,' quop scho, 'what thou wit-in a schorte while pou schaff be priued' of 4 þe lordchip þat pou now hase?' And when he herde þis he was righte wrathe wit hir, & saide, 'pou arte nozte worthy,' quop he, 'for to be preste here. Alexander come to þe 3isterdaye, and pou prophicyed' hym gude; And to me pou sais, þat I schaff lose all 8 my lordechipe.' And scho ansuerd; & saide, 'Bee3 nozte angry to me,' quop scho: 'for all þis buse be fulfilled, and nathynge þare of leste ne ouerhippede.' A littill after it felle þat Alexander was gretely angrede at Sc rassageras, and tuke fra 12 hym his lordchipe, & Sc rassageras went to þe cite of Athene3, and sare wepande he complenede hym to þe citazenes of Athene3 & talde þam how þat Alexander hadd' priued' hym of his lordechipe. And þam þe Atheneanes ware wonder [wrathe] towards 16 Alexander, and made grete boste & manace, þat þay schold' ryse agaynes hym, bot if he restorede Sc rassageras agayne till his lordechipe. Alexander remowed' his Oste fra Platea to þe citee of Athenes, and when [he] herde tesse þat þe Athenens ware 20 wrathe till hym-warde, and manaced hym, he wrate vn-to þam a lettre þat spak one this wyse.

'¹ Alexander, þe son of Philippe and of qwene Olympias, vn to the Athenenes, gretynge. Fra þe tyme þat oure Fadir was 24 dedde, & we were sett in þe Trone of his dingnytee, we went into þe weste Marches, whare all þe folke3 þat duelle3 thare for þe maste party 3alde þam vn-till vs wit-owtten stresse. Fra þe citee of Rome to þe weste see occyane, all men sub- 28 mytte þam vn-till vs þat wit oure awen fre will we hase taken þam ²till oure grace. And thase þat walde nozte submytt þam till vs wit fairenes, we hase distruyed³ þam & paire cite3, and doungeñ þam down to þe erthe. And now þis oper 32 daye as we went fra Macedoyne & passed thurgh Asye: bi þe cite of Thebe, þe Thebeyens despysed' vs, & lete as þay sett nozte by vs. Bot onane we garte pair pryde falle, and de-

¹ Four half lines space with miniature A.

² Here the scribe first has written 'to grace' and then erased it, substituting as

in text.

³ The *uy* in *distruyed* has been substituted for *uu* by the same scribe.

strued¹ bathe þam & thaire citee. And þare-fore we write vn-to 3ow; that 3e sende vs ten philosophres þat be wyse, * by þe whilke we may be encensed and conselled. For oper thyng
4 will we nane aske 3ow, Bot afte anely þat þe halde vs for 3our lorde & 3our kynge. And 3if 3e wilt no3te submytt 3owe vntill vs, 3ow buse oper be strangere þan we, or efts submytt yow to sum lordechip, þat be strangere þan oures.
8 'The Athenyenes redd² pis lettre and þan pay bigan to crye one highte. And ane, þat highte Eschille, stode vp amange3 þam, and said: 'It es fully my conseil,' quop he, 'þat we on na wise assent [to thise] worde3 of Alexander.' Alle þe folke þan
12 þat was gadirde þare, prayed þe philosopre Demostines, þat he walde tell þam his conselle, as touchynge þat matere. And he stude vp, & badd² all men be still. And þan he said vn-to þam. 'Sirs,' quop he, 'I pray 3ow takes tent vn-to my worde3 &
16 herkenes gudly what I sailt say. If 3e fele 3ow of power, for till agayne-stande Alexander, & to surprise hym, þan feghtes wit hym manly, and obeys no3te till his worde3. And if 3e suppose 3e be no3te strange ynoghe to feghte wit hym þan
20 here3 hym, and obeys vn-till hym. 3e knawe wele, þat als oure eldirs telles vs, 3erses was a grett kynge, & a myghty, and many victories he gatt. And neuer þe lesse in Ellada he suffrede grete meschefe. Bot he, this Alexander, hase done
24 many batailles, in þe whilke he suffrede neuer disese bot alwaye had þe ouerhande. Þe Thirienes, I pray 3ow, ware [þai] no3te balde knyghtes and strange, and all þaire lyfe hade bene excercysede in Armes? And whate profitede þan þaire strenghe?
28 Þe Thebienes also þat were so wyse, and so grete exercyse hadde in armes, fra þe firste tyme þat þe citee was bygged, where-off seruede þaire grete witt þam, and þaire grete strength, when Alexander assailede þam? Þe Poliponiens faghte wit Alexander,
32 bot pay myghte na while agayne-stande his men of armes. Bot also þaire² ware disconfit and slaen. It es no3te vnknawen vn-to 3owe, how many citee3 castells & townnez for fere submittis þam vn-till hym wit-owten any assawte gyffynge. Þarefore,
36 it es no3te my consaile þat 3e be heuy, ne wrathe till Alexander

sophers to teach him
* Leaf 12 bk.
rendering homage to him; or else must it either be stronger than Alexander or dependent on some stronger state.
The speech of Aeschylus against Alexander. The Athenians beg counsel of Demosthenes. He tells them if they feel themselves strong enough to resist, but if not then let them submit. He compares Alexander and Xerxes together. He narrates Alexander's victorious campaign.

He advises them not to be froward towards Alexander.

¹ Four half lines space with miniature T.

² MS. reads 'paire' for pay. This form

recurs on p. 55, l. 29. Cf. Icelandic *þeir*. There is nothing left out nor is it a misprint.

Alexander is a wise and reasonable man, neither would he have put Sc rassageras out of his Lordship except for treason against him.

The Athenians commend this

* Leaf 13.

counsel greatly and sent tribute but no philosophers.

He hears of the speeches of both Aeschylus and Demosthenes.

He writes them a letter. The Letter of Alexander to the Athenians.

He had proposed a philosophic dispute with them, and have shown them his friends.

But their deeds showed otherwise. Whoso of them rises against him, he will make an example of. They, as knaves, think ill and fear ill.

He had put S. out of office for treason. They have despised his demand for ten philosophers.

for Sc rassageras. For all men knowes wele pat Alexander es a wonder wyse man & a warre, & a man pat gouernes hym by reson; and *pare-fore* 3e may wele wete, he walde nozte putt Sc rassageras oute of his lordchipe upon lesse pan forfett vn- 4 till hym.' When pe Athenyenes had herde pir wordez, pay commedid gretly the conseil of Demostines, and than they ordeyned a coroun of golde pe weghte of .l. pounde, and sent Messangers *parewit*, and wit tribute vn-till Alexander, bot 8 philosophres sent pay nane. * And when pire Messangers come till Alexander, pay gaffe hym pe coroun, and pe tribute, pat pe Athenyenes sent hym, and talde hym pat pay had highte hym a grete nowmer of catelle. And when Alexander had herd pam, 12 he vnderstode wele pe conceit of Eschilus pat conceitd pe Athenyenes to agaynestand hym, and also pe conceit of Demostenes that conceitd pan pe contrary, and pan he wrate a lettre to pan whare-of the Tenoure was this.

16

¹ Alexander pe son of Philippe and quene Olympias, for pe name of kynge will we nozte take apon vs, before we hafe oure enemys vnder oure subieccion: vn-to pe Athenyenes gretlyng. It es nozte oure entent to come in 3our citee wit oure oste, 20 Bot allanly to come & dispytte wit 3our philosophres, and to asche pan certane questyons, Oure purposse was also to hafe declared for oure trewe leggez & oure gude Frendez. Bot 3our dedez proues pe contrary, as it ² done vs till vnderstande. Oure 24 goddez we take to witnesse, pat whilke of 3ow so rysez agaynez vs, we sail take swilke wreke apoun hym pat oper men sail take ensample *pare-by*. Bot 3e als schrewes, and euyl men, euer mare trowez itt, and thynkes itt. Wate 3e nozte wele pat 28 pe Thebienes pat raise agaynes vs, hadd paire mede als pay disserued. And 3e haffand in vs a wrange consayte, blamez vs, For we putt Sc rassageras owte of his Office the whilke ³ forfett gretly agaynes oure maieste. We sent vn-to 3ow bi 32 lettre for ten philosophres, bot 3e, nozte knawande oure grete powere & oure myghte, despyssed oure maundement and walde nozte fulfill it. Neuer pe les if all 3e hafe offendid agaynes

¹ Four half lines with miniature A.

² The reader must probably here supply 'hase' between 'as it' and 'as till vnderstande', but as it occurs several times it

may be a syntactical peculiarity.

³ The reader must probably supply *was* or *dede* between *pe whilke* and *forfett*, but see previous notice.

vs whider-towarde and bene disobeyande till oure maiestee, we forgiffe 3ow all 3our gilt, and þe greuance þat 3e hafe don vs, so þat 3e be obeyande vn-till vs, fra þis tyme forwarde. Com-
 4 forthes 3ow þarefore & bee3 mery, for of vs 3e schall hafe na greuance ne na disesse be-cause 3e did after þe conceit of Demostynes.'

¹ When þe Athenyenes herd þis lettre redd, þay ware rizte
 8 gladd, and þaȝ Alexander & his Oste went fra thethyȝ vn-to Lacedoyne. Bot þe Lacedouns walde one na wyse obey vn-till Alexander, bot said ilkaȝ of þaȝ till oper, 'latt vs no3te be lykke þe Athenyenes,' quop þay, 'þat drede þe manaschyngne,
 12 and þe boste of Alexander bot late vs schewe oure my3te, and oure strenghe and manly defende *oure citee agayne3 hym.' When þay hadd saide, þay spered þe 3ates of þe cetee faste, and went manly to þe walles. And a grete nowmer of þaȝ
 16 tuke þaȝ schippe3 & went to þe see, a grete nauy, to feghte wit Alexander are he come to lande. And when Alexander saw this, he sent a lettre to þaȝ sayand on this wyse.

² 'Alexander þe soȝn of Philippe and of þe quene Olympias
 20 vn-to þe Lacedounes we sende. We conceit 3ow, þat þat, that 3our elders hase lefte 3ow, 3e kepe hale & sound & in sauete³ and lyfte3 no3te 3our hende ouer hie to þe thynges þat þe may no3te reche to. And if 3e desire for to hafe ioy of 3our strenthe,
 24 dose swa þat 3e be worthy to hafe wirchiþe of vs. Þarefore we comande 3ow, þat 3e turne agayne wit 3our schippe3, and leue3 þaȝ, & gase to lande by 3our awenȝ fre wiȝ; or sekirly I sall sett fire in thaȝ & brynne þaȝ. And if 3ee dispice oure
 28 commandement, blame3 na maȝ bot 3our selfe, if we wreke vs one 3owe.'

⁴ The Lacedounes redd þis lettre, and when it was redd, þay ware wonder heuy. No3te for-thi þay redied þaȝ to feghte.
 32 Bot Alexander arryued in an oper coste, and come to þe citee are þay wiste and vmblyapped þe citee one ilke a syde, and assailede it strangly & dange þe Lacedouns of þe walles & slewe many of þaȝ & wounded many, and sett fyre in paire
 36 schippe3 & brynt þaȝ. Þe remanant of þaȝ þat ware lefte

Nevertheless he will forgive them if they be good for the future, since they followed Demosthenes' advice.

Alexander goes thence into Lacedemonia. But they would in no wise submit to

* Leaf 13 bk.

him. But despising him the Athenians manned the walls. Yet others of them fled over-seas, and others went to meet him in fight.'

The Letter of Alexander to the Lacedemonians bidding them return and submit.

Alexander arrives by an unforeseen way and surrounds them.

He attacks the city

¹ Three lines space miniature W.

² Four half lines with miniature A.

³ MS. *sautee* with *u* written over

another letter.

⁴ Four lines space with miniature T.

fiercely till
they sur-
render.

Alexander
tells them
they would
not receive
him peace-
fully. there-
fore are
they come
to this
great
harm.

Alexander
reproaches
them with
overgreat
conceit and
quotes a
homely
proverb.

* Leaf 14.

They
thought in
vain to
have done
to him as
their fore-
fathers did
to King
Xerxes.
Darius
hears of the
coming of
Alexander.
He is
greatly
terrified
and holds
a council.
The speech
of Darius.
He bewails
that he has
under-
rated him,
and sees
that they
must now
look to
their
safety. He
fears that
God's Fore-
sight helps
Alexander
so that he
may even-
tually con-
quer
Persia.

appon lyfe, when pay saw this grete meschefe come owte of þe citee vn-till Alexander, & felle doun at his fete, & besoughte hym of mercy & of grace. And Alexander ansuerd, 'I come to 3ow,' quop he, 'meke & mylde, bot in þat degre 3e walde nozte 4 ressayffe me, þarefore now are 3our schippe3 brynned; and 3our citee distruyed; & 3our folke3 slayne. Warned I nozte be-fore þat 3e schulde nozte heue 3our hande3 ouer-hye to þe sternes, to þe whilke nane erthely man may wynnd. For wha so euer 8 clymbe3 hier, þan his fete may wynnd to sum halde, he saff falle onane doun to þe grounde. And þarefore es þare a com-mone prouerbe: Pat "wha sa hewes to hie, þe chippes wiff fatte in his egh." 3e wende hafe done tiff vs as 3our eldirs 12 didde sumetyme tiff kynge 3erses, bot 3our wenying dessayued 3ow. For 3e myghte nozte agayne-stande vs when we assaillede 3ow.' Whan * he hadd saide on this wise, he gaffe þan leue to gaa whare pay walde. And than he remouede thethynd & went 16 to-warde Cicill. And when þe emperour Darius herd tell of þe comyng of Alexander, he was gretly abaiste and sent after aff his prince3, Dukes & Erles, & oper grete lordes, & went tiff a consaile. And he saide vn-to þan, 'I see wele,' quop he, 'þat 20 he, this Alexander, þat gase thus abowte werrayand; waxe3 gretly in wirchipe, and ay-whare whare he comme3 he hase þe victory. I wende he hadd bene a theeffe & a robbour, þat hadde- went tiff cuntre3 þat ere wayke & feble, and durst nozte agayne- 24 stande hym, & robbed þan & spoyled þan. Bot now, I see wele, he es a doghty man of Armes, & a noble werrayour. And ay þe mare þat I hafe depraued hym and despysed hym; þe mare ryse3 his name, & his wirchipe. I sent hym a balle, a toppe, 28 & a scourge, for to lere barne-laykes; bot hym þat I called a disciple, he seme3 a mayster & whare-so-euer he gase, Fortune gase wit hym. Pare-fore vs byhoue3 to trete of oure hele, & of oure pople3, and pute awaye aff pride & aff foly: & 32 namare despisse Alexander, saynge þat he es noghte, by cause we are emperour of Perse. For his littilnes waxes and oure gretnes decresse3. I hafe grete dowte, þat godde3 forluke helpe3 hym, so þat whils we ere abowte, & wene3 to putte hym 36 out of Ellada, we be spoyled, by hym, of þe rewme of Perse.'

¹ When Darius hadd said thir wordez, his broder Coriather

¹ Four lines.

ansuerd, & said, 'pou hase here,' quop he, 'gretly magnified' & commendid¹ Alexander, in that, pat pou sais he es mare seruent for to come in-to Perse, pañ we in-till Ellada. And parefore
 4 if it be plesyng vn-to *3our* maistee, vse *3e* þe maners of Alexander, and so sañ [*3e*] wele & peysably welde *3our* empire & conquere many oper rewmes. Alexander, when he gase to bataile and sañ seghte, he lates [nane] of his prynces ne his
 8 oper lordez gaa be-fore, & ¹ hym selfe come by-hynde, bot he gase bi-fore pañ atte, and so risez his wirchip & his name.'

Darius' brother advises him to lead his own men in the van as Alexander does.

Quod² Darius, 'wheper awe me to take sa ensample at
 12 Alexander, or Alexander at me.' A prynce ansuerde & saide, 'Alexander,' quod he, 'es a warrer² mañ & a wyse, & hase trespaste in na degree & parefore he duse manly by hym selfe all pat he doez. For he hase taken þe fourme of þe lyonñ.'
 16 'Whare-by knawes pou pat,' quop Darius, *and he ansuerd, & saide, 'whate tyme,' quop he, 'pat I was sent to Macedoyne for til aske tribute of kyng Philippe, I saw, bi his Figure & his wise ansuere, pat he schuld be a passyng mañ, bathe of witt,
 20 & of doynge. Thare-fore, if it be plesyng vn-to *3ow*, I consell pat *3e* sende till all þe landez & cuntrez pat langez to *3our* empire, pat es to say to Parthy & Medy, Appollamy, Mesopotamy, Ytaly, Bactri, and till all þe remenant for pay ere
 24 subietez vn-to *3ow* a hundreth: c. and fifty l. of dyuerse³ folke. To þe lordes of⁴ all thire, I rede *3e* sende commandyng pañ, pat pay come to *3ow*, in all þe haste pat pay may, with all þe meñ pat pay may gett whilk ere able to ga to werre⁵. And when
 28 pay [ere] all sembled to gedir late vs beseke oure goddis of helpe. And pañ Alexander when he seez swilk a multitude of folke agaynes hym, his hert sañ faile hym, and his mens also. And owper he sañ for fere turne hame agayne till his
 32 awen cuntree, or ells submytt hym vn-to *3ow*.' And pañ ansuerd anoper prynce, & sayde, 'This es a gud conceit,' quop he, 'bot it es nozte profitable. Wate pou nozte wele pat a wolfe

Darius demurs.

A prince tells him of the person of Alexander, and

*Leaf 14 bk.

advise him to gather a tremendous force that Alexander's heart may fail him.

The counsel is commended but for the

¹ & is written in above the line in the MS. by the same scribe.

² Perhaps the abbreviation is here really a mere flourish, and we should read *warr*, though the contraction mark is well made.

³ In MS. *deverse* was at first written,

and *y* substituted by the same scribe.

⁴ *af* written and crossed out between *lordes* and *of*.

⁵ *were* at first written and changed to *werre* by the scribe.

cowardice
of the
Persians
and the
wisdom of
the Greeks.

Alexander
gathers his
host. He
bathes in a
cold river
and gets a
fever, to
the great
alarm of
his army.

Alexander
summons
Philip his
Physician.

* Leaf 15.

But an-
other Lord
is jealous
of him
and warns
Alexander
that Philip
would
poison
him being
in Darius'
pay.

The Physi-
cian comes
to Alex-
ander.

chaseȝ a grete floke of schepe & gerse paṁd sparple. Righte so,
and þe wysdome of þe grekes passeȝ oper nacyons.'

¹ In this mene tymē, Alexander sembled¹ a gret multitude of
folkez to þe nowmer of cc of feghtynge meṁ, and remewed to 4
warde Perse, & come tiȝt a reuere þat es called Mociona, of
whilke þe water was wonder calde, & faire, & clere. And
Alexander hadd¹ a grete lyste for to be bathede þare-in, and went
in-to it & bathed hym, & waschede hym þare-in, and also soṁ 8
he felle in a feuer and a heued-werke þare-wit, so þat he fure
wonder ill. And when þe Macedoyns saw þaire lorde so grefe
seke, þay were wonder heuy and reghte dredand; and said
amanges selfe: 'And Darius,' quod þay, 'wete þat oure lorde 12
Alexander be þus seke, he sall come & falle apoṁ vs sodaynly,
& fordo vs ilkaṁ. For, and we hadd¹ þe hele of oure lorde
Alexander, we hadd¹ comforth ynoghe & dredde no nacyoṁ.'

Than kyng Alexander called¹ tiȝt hym his Phicisiene þat 16
highte Philippe & badd¹ hym ordeyne hym a Medeyne for his
sekenes. Þis ilk Phicisiene was² * bot a ȝong maṁ, bot he was
a passyng kunnyng maṁ and a sotell in all þe poyntes þat
langed to phisic. And he highte Alexander, þat [by] a certane 20
drynke he sulde onane make hym all hale. Nowe felt it, þat
was wit Alexander a prynce, þat highte Parmenius & was
lorde of hermony. This prynce hade grete envy to þis
phicisiene, bi-cause þat Alexander luffede hym so passandly 24
wele & belyfe he wrate tiȝt Alexander, and warned hym þat
he schulde be warre wit Phillippe his phicisiene, and on na wyse
resayfe þat drynke þat he walde gyffe hym. For he said, þat
Darius had highte to giffe hym his doghter to wyffe & his 28
kyngdoṁ after his dissesse if swa ware, þat he myghte be any
crafte make ane ende of hym. When Alexander hadde redd¹
þis lettre he was na thyng troubled, so mekill he trustede of
þe conscience of his phisician.

32

In þe mene tyme, þis Phisician come tiȝt Alexander wit þe
forsaid drynke, and Alexander tuk þis drynke in a hande & þe
forsaid lettre in his oper hande and biheld¹ þe Phisician in
þe vesage riȝte scharpely. To whome þe Phisician saide: 36

¹ Five lines space with miniature I.

² At bottom of leaf 14 obv. is written 'ff (fecit?) Sereu. Scr.'

'wirchipfull Emperour,' quop he, 'be na thyng fered bot drynke
 pe medcyne baldely,' and þaṁ onane Alexander tuk this drynke,
 & schewed Philippe þe *lettre*. And when Philippe had redde
 4 þe *lettre*, he said till Alexander: 'Now for sothe, my lorde,'
 quop he, 'I take oure goddes to witnesse þat I ne am noȝte
 gilty of this tresoṁ, þat here es wretyn.' Alexander þaṁ was
 aff hale als euer he was, & called vn-till Philippe his phisician
 8 & embraced hym in his armes & said: 'Philippe,' quop he,
 'knaues þou how mekiſt laſſe & triste I haſe in the. Firſte
 I dranke thi medecyne, & syne I schewede þe þe *lettre* þat
 was sent me agaynes the.' 'Mi lorde,' quop Philippe, 'I be-
 12 ſeke ȝow þat ȝe wolle vochesaffe to send after myṁ accusour,
 and do hym come bi-fore ȝour preſence þat þis *lettre* sent vn-to
 ȝow, and haſe lered me for to do¹ swilk a hie tresoṁ. Be-lyfe
 þaṁ gerte Alexander send after Parmeny for to come vn-till
 16 hym, and gerte þe sothe be ſerched, & faunde þat he was worthy
 þe dede. And þaṁ he gert girde of his heued.

Alexander
 takes the
 drink given
 him, and
 shows the
 Physician
 the letter.

Alexander
 declares to
 him his
 great trust.

The trial of
 the accuser.

² Fra þeine kyng Alexander remowed his Oste till hermony þe
 mare & onane he conquered it, & put it vnder his subieccioṁ.
 20 And fra þeine he trauailed many a day *wit his Oste, and at þe
 laſte come till a cuntre wonder drye, & full of creunesceȝ of
 cauerneȝ, & alde ciſternes whare na water myghte be fundeṁ.
 And Fra þeine pay passede thurgh a cuntree, þat es called
 24 Andrias, to þe Reuere of Eufrates. And þare pay lugede þaṁ.
 þan Alexander garte brynge many grete treeȝ, for to make
 a brygge of ouer þat water, appoṁ ſchippeȝ, and garte tye þaṁ
 Sameṁ wit chenys of Ireṁ & ireṁ nayleȝ. And when þe brigge
 28 was aff redy, he badde his knyghtes wende ouer apoṁ it. Bot
 when pay saw þe grete reuer ryne so swiftly and with so
 a grete a byrre, thay dred þaṁ þat þe brygge ſchulde faſſe.
 For pay supposede þe chenys ſchuld breke be-cause of grete
 32 weghte. And, when Alexander saw þaṁ dredand on this
 wyſe, he gert hirde-meṁ, þat were þare kepaṁd katell, wend
 ouer before, and warnede þat þe Oste ſchulde folowe þaṁ.
 Bot ȝit þe knyghtis ware ferde & durste noghte wende ouer.
 36 Thaṁ was Alexander riȝte wrathe and callede vntill hym aff
 his prynces, & grete lordeȝ, and firſte he went hym ſelfe ouer

Alexander
 conquers
 Armenia

* Leaf 15
 bk.

the Greater
 and
 marches
 through
 deserts to
 the Eu-
 phrates.
 He builds a
 bridge of
 boats and
 logs, but
 his knights
 fear to cross
 it because
 of the
 fierceness
 of the
 current.
 Alexander
 sends
 herdsmen
 over, yet
 the knights
 durst not
 follow.
 Alexander
 then goes

¹ MS. repeats *for to do* twice.

² Three lines with miniature F.

first over
the bridge
with his
princes.
Then the
army
follows.
Alexander
destroys
the bridge
behind
him. The
knights
murmur
thereat,
fearing dis-
aster.

Alex-
ander's
speech to
his men.

Let them
all perish
or con-
quer, for
they shall
never see
home again
till they
have over-
thrown all
their
enemies.

Darius
gathers a
great force

* Leaf 16.

to meet
Alexander
upon the
river Ti-
gris. But
his men
flee.

The brave
Persian
who dares
alone try to
take Alex-
ander's life
in disguise
for the
sake of the

þe bryges, & all his pryncez folowed hym, and sythen all þe Oste. Twa grete ryuers rynnes thurgh Medee, Mesopotamy and Babiloyne, þat es to say Tygre & Eufrates, and soo rynnez in-to þe reuere¹ of Nilus. When Alexander & all hys Oste⁴ ware past ouer Eufrates, he gert smyte sonder þe brygge þat he hadd' gert make bifore, and dissolue ilk a pece þare-off fra oper. And when his knyghtis sawe that, þay ware reghte heuy and murnede gretly þarefore, and said' emanges þam selfe, 'What 8 saß we now doo,' quop þay, 'when we are harde by-stadde wit oure enemys & walde flee. For ouer þis reuere may we nozte wynn.' And when Alexander perceyued' þat murmoure of his folke, he said vn-to þam. 'What es þat,' quop he, 'þat 3e say 12 amangez 3ow, "If it falle þat we flee owte of þe bataile." Sothely, I late 3ow wele wite, þat þis is þe cause whi I garte for-do þis brygg, þat I gert make; For-thi, þat owþer we schulde feghte manly or elis if [we] walde flee, we schulde all perische at 16 anes and all drynke of a coppe. For-whi þe victorye es nozte aretted' to þam þat fliez, Bot to þam þat habydez, or folowes on þe chace. Þarefore comforthez 3ow wele, & bese balde of hertis, and thyнке it bot a playe stalworthly to feghte. For I say 20 3ow sekerly; we ne schaff neuer see Macedoyne, be-fore we hafe ouercomen all oure enemys, And þam wit þe victorie we saß tourne hame agayne.'

² In þis mene tyme, kyng Darius gadirde a grete multitude²⁴ of men agaynes Alexander, and ordeyned' ouer þam fyve-hundreth * chyftaynes of grete lordes and lused hym wit his men apouþ þe reuere of Tygre. And one a day thir twa kynges wit þaire bather Osters mett to-gedir apouþ a faire felde²⁸ and faughte to-gedir wonder egerly. Bot sone Darius men hadd þe werre & 3ode to grounde thikkfalde, slayne in þe felde. And when þe remenante saw þat, þay tuk þam to þe flighte. In Darius oste was a man of Perse, a doghety, & a balde; ³² to whaym Darius highte for to giffe his doghter to wyfe, if so were, þat he myghte, by any way, sla kyng Alexander. This man gatt hym clethyng and Armour like vn-to þe macedoyns, and went amangez þam, as þay faghte, ay till he come by-hynd ³⁶ kyng Alexander. And alsoñ als he come nere hym, he lifte his

¹ Scribe first wrote *revere* here, and then wrote a *y* (*ryvere*) over it. The process is

quite plain.

² Two lines with small miniature I.

swerde on heghte, & lete flye at hym wit all þe myghte pat he
hade, and hitt hym on þe heued¹ so fercely, þat he perched¹ his
bacenett, and drewe þe blode of hym. Wheñ Alexander knyghtis
4 saw that: þay tuke hym anone, & broghte hym bfore Alexander,
and Alexander, supposyng þat he hadde bene a macedoyne, saide
vn-till hym. 'Wirchipfull man,' quop he, ' & doghety & strange
what ayled þe at me, for to giffe suylke a strake, knewe þou
8 nozte wele þat it was I, Alexander þour helpere & þour allere
seruande.' And [the] Percyene ansuerd, & said: 'Wiete þou
wele wirchipfull emperour,' quop he, 'I ne ame na macedoyne,
bot I am a mañ of Perse; and this dede I didd. For kyng
12 Darius made me a promysse of his doghetir to wife, if I myghte
brynge hym thi heid.' Than kyng Alexander called bi-for hym
all his knyghtis and askede þam what þam thoghte was for to
do wit this mañ. Sum ansuerde & saide þam thoghte it beste
16 to gerre smyte of his heid, Sum for to putt hym to þe fire for to
brynne, Sum to gare drawe & hang hym. And when Alexander
had herde þaire conceit, he ansuerd & said: 'Sirs,' quop he,
'what wrange or what defawte can þe fynde in þis mañ, Señ he
20 hase besied hym till obey till his lordes commandement, and at
his power fulfilled it. Whilke of þow, so demeþ hym worthy to
be dedde, es worthy in tyme commynge to hafe þe same dome.
For if I commande ane of þow for to ga & sla Darius, þe same
24 payne, that þe deme þis mañ for to suffre, ware þe worthy for to
suffre þourselve of Darius, if þe myzte be getyñ.' ² And * þan he
commanded þat he schulde wende hame to his felawes wit-owtten
any harme. When Darius herde þat his lordes ware slayne in
28 grete nowmer, he gadered a grete multitude of knyghtis and of
fotemen, and went vp on a hiff þat es called Taurisius, and thare
he made his mustre of his meñ, supposynge þat he schuld ouer-
come Alexander thurgh multitude of folke. Bot alsoñ als þay
32 mett wit þaire bathere osteþ, and bigañ for to fighte, Darius
meñ fledð and hymselfe also. And Alexander persuede hym
vn-to þe citee of Bactrian, and þare he luded hym, and offerde
Sacrifice till his goddeþ. And on þe morne he garte assaile þe

King's
daughter.

Alexander
asks him
why he did
this. He
answers.

Alexander
asks coun-
sel of his
knights,
what shall
he do with
this man?
Alexander
speaks to
them, and
shows this
man forth
to them as
an ex-
ample.
And then
he utters
his will.

* Leaf 16
bk.

Darius
gathers his
men again
to the fight,
but yet
again is he
overcome.

Alexander
pursues
him.
He con-
quers Bac-

¹ The scribe wrote first 'perceed,' altered afterwards, in a very rough way, to 'perched.'

² MS. reads 'and he commanded' at

bottom of first side of leaf 16 and 'þan he commanded' on the top of second side of the same leaf.

trian,
taking
great trea-
sure to-
gether with
Darius'
mother and
wife.

citee, and wanne it on werre. And in þe cheffe place *pare*-of he sett his trone. And all þir *oper* citez þat were abowte it, he wanne þam o werre, & putt þam vnder his subieccioñ. In þis ilke citee of Bactrian, he fande tresour wit-owtten nowmer, and also his moder, and his wyfe.

A Persian
prince
offers to
betray
Darius to
Alexander
if he will
grant him
ten thou-
sand
knights.
Alex-
ander's
answer.

¹ And in þe mene tyme, whils *Alexander* lay at Batran: *pare* come a pryce of Darius oste vn-till *Alexander*, & said vn-till hym, 'Wirchipfull emperour,' quop he, 'I hafe a lang tyme bene s a knyght of Darius, and done hym grete seruyce; and zitt to this day I had neuer na reward' of hym. And *pare*-fore if it like vn-to zowre maieste; take me ten thowsande of zour meñ of armes; and I hete zow, for to brynge to zour hande kyng ¹² Darius, & þe maste parte of his oste.' And when *Alexander* had herde þis, he said vn-till hym. 'Frende,' quop he, 'I thanke þe mekill of thi faire promys. Neuer þe lesse, I late þe wite my meñ will nozte beleue þat þou wilt feghte agaynes thyñ owenñ ¹⁶ peple.' In þe mene tyme a Prynce of Darius oste sent vn-till hym a letter, of whilk þis was þe tenour.

Letter of
one of
Darius'
princes to
Darius be-
seeching
help.

* Leaf 17.

² 'To Darius, grete kyng of kynges, his lordes whilke he ³ hase ordeyned cheftaynes vnder hym Sende; meke seruyce. Oftymes ²⁰ be-fore this hafe we wreten to zour maieste, and now agayne we writte vn-to zow, & late; zow wite þat þe macedoynes & kyng *Alexander*, as wode lyouns ere enterde* oure lande; and all oure strenthes, as a wilde raueschande beste he hase destroyed: ²⁴ & oure knyghtes slayne. And oppressed we are wit so grete tribulacionns, þat we [may] na lengare suffre his mawgree, ne his malece bere. Whare-fore, mekly we be-seke zour benyngne maiestee, þat ze wilt drawe to zoure mynde oure meke seruyce, ²⁸ and swilke socoure vouchsaße to send' vs, þat we put off and agaynestande þe violence & þe malice of oure fore-said enemys.' When Darius had redde þis lettre, on ane he gert writte a lettir to kyng *Alexander*, sayand on þis wyse.

Darius to
Alexander,
reproach-
ing his vain
ambitions,
thanking

⁴ 'Daryus kyng of Perse and kyng of kynges, vn-to my seruande *Alexander*, I say. Now late *pare* es comenñ till oure eres tythynges: þat þou wenez to euenñ thi littilhede till oure heghe magnificence. Bot Sen it es impossible till a heuy asse, wit ³⁶ 32

¹ Three lines with miniature A and knight's head within.

² Three lines space with miniature T.

³ MS. repeats 'he' twice.

⁴ Three lines space with miniature D and a man's head within, much faded.

owtten wenges, or oper instrumentez of flying, for to be lifte vp to pe sternes, late noȝte thyñ hert be raysede to hye in pride for pe victories pat pou hase geten. We hase wele herd tell pat
 4 pou hase done gentilly, and schewed grete humanitye till oure moder, oure wyfe, & oure childre, and parefore I late pe wele wite pat, als lang als pou dose wele to þam, pou sañ fynde me nane enemy to the. And if pou do ill to þam pou sañ hase pe
 8 enemytee of me, and pare-fore spare þam noghte, bot do to þam as pe liste. For somtyme pou sañ see & fele pe sentence of oure ire lighte apowñ thi heghe pride.' Whenn Alexander hadð redde þis lettre he wate hym Anoper agayne whare-off pe tenour
 12 was this.

¹ 'Alexander þe son of Philippe & qwene Olympias to Darius kyng of Perse we write. Pride & wayne glorie hase oure goddez all way hated; and takez vengeance of dedly men pat takes
 16 apowñ þam þe name of immortalitee. Bot þou, als I wele see, cesseez noȝte ȝitt hider-to for to blasfeme in all pat þou may. Bot of that pat þou blamez me for þe benygnytes that I schewed
 20 pi moder, pi wyfe, & pi childre; þou ert moued on a lewed fantasye. For I late pe wele wyte, I did it noȝte * for to be thanked of the, ne for to hase thi Beneuolence pare-fore. Bot
 it come of a gentilnes of oure awenn hert, fownded in vertu. Of thee victories also whilke þe forluke of godd hase sent vs, ere
 24 we na-thing enpriddede. For we knawe wele pat oure goddis alway helpes vs, whilke þou ilk a daye dispysez & settez at noȝte. And this sañ be þe laste letter pat I sañ writte vn-to þe. Beware if þou wilt, For I say the sekerly, I come to þe
 28 onane.' Þis lettre gaffe Alexander to þe messangers of Darius and many grete giftez pare wit. Seyme,² he sent anoper lettre, till his prynce & his lordez, of þis tenour.

³ 'Alexander, þe son of Philippe & of þe quene Olympias vn-
 32 to þe prynce & þe lordez vnder our subieccioñ in Capadoce, In laodice, or ells whare duelland, gretynge, & gude grace. We charge þou & commandeþ þow straitly pat ilkañ of þow ordayne vs in all þe haste pat þe may j^m nete-hydes barked; &
 36 send þam till Alexander, pat we and oure knyghtis may gere

him for his kindness to his wife and children, and enjoining him to continue his courtesy to them.

Alexander to Darius, reproaching him with assuming to himself the character of deity, spurning

* Leaf 17 bk.

his proffered thanks, and leaving the decision of the matter to the gods.

Alexander writes to his Lords, ordering commissariat materials.

¹ Three lines space, miniature A, with king's head (much faded).

² MS. clearly reads *seyne*, it may be for 'seyne' (=seine).

³ Four lines space, red capital A, much smudged; a small a written beside it in the margin.

make vs of þam clethyng, & schoees; And wit cameles þat 3e haue at Aleksander gerre cary þam to þe water of Eufates.' In þis mene tyme a prynce of Darius, Nostande by name, wrate to Darius on þis wise.

4

One of his barons writes to Darius, telling of his own defeat and the treachery of others.

¹ 'To Darius þe wirchipfull grete godd' his seruande Nostand' law seruyce. Me aughte noȝte to sende swylk tythyng to ȝour ryalle maiestee, bot grete nede gers me do it. Pare-fore be it knaweñ vn-to ȝour hie lordchipe, þat twa grete prynceȝ of ȝours, & I, hase foghteñ wit kyng Alexander, And hym es fallen þe victorie, & slayne he hase thir twa worthy prynceȝ, & mekiñt oper folke, and I fleed greuously wonded. And many worthi knyghtis of ȝours hase for-saken ȝour lordchipe & ioyned þam tiñ Alexander oste, þe whilk he hase wirchipfully, and hase giffen grete lordchipes of ȝours.' And wheñ Darius had redd' þis *lettre*, he sent in haste tiñ Nostand, and commanded hym for tiñ ordeyne a grete Oste; and manfully agaynestande þe folke of Macedoyne. He sent also a *lettre* to Porus kyng of Ynde, prayng hym to helpe hym agaynes Alexander, and Porus wrate agayne in þis manere.

Darius writes to him, ordering him to gather a great force, and to Porus, King of India, ask-
* Leaf 18.

ing help. Porus replies that he is at that time grievously sick, but that he will come as soon as possible with ten legions of knights.

² 'Porus, kyng of Ynde, vn-to Darius, kyng of Perse, gretyng. For þou hase prayed vs to come to the in helpyng * of ³ the agaynes thyn enemys, we late the wete, þat we are redy & alwaye hase bene, for to com to helpe ȝow. Bot as at þis tyme we are lettete to com to ȝow, be-cause of grete seknesse þat we ere stadd' in, Neuer þe lesse, sekerly, it es riȝte heuy vn-tiñ vs, & greuous, vn-tiñ [vs to] here of þe grete injury þat es done vn-tiñ ȝow. And þarefore we late ȝow wite, þat wit-in schorte tym, we sal come for to helpe ȝow wit teñ legyouns of knyghtis.' Bot wheñ Rodogorius, Darius moder, herd' teñ þat Darius hir soñ ordayneñ hym for to feghte agayne wit kyng Alexander scho was riȝte sory and wrote a *lettre* vn-tiñ hym þat contened' this sentence.

32

Darius' mother writes to him, coun-

'To ⁴kyng Darius, hir moste biloued' son, Rodogorius, his modir sendeȝ gretyng & ioy. I hase vnderstandeñ þat 3e hase assemblede ȝour meñ, & mekiñt oper folke also, for to feghte

¹ Four lines with red capital T, much smudged; a small t written beside it in margin.

² Two lines with smudged capital P; a small p written in margin.

³ On leaf 17 of *þe*, on leaf 18 of *the*.

⁴ *Rodorius* scratched out. Four lines with large capital T in red; small t in margin beside.

- eftsones wit Alexander. Bot I late þe wite it wiþ availe þe
 nathyng. For þoghe 3e hadd' gadirde to gedir alle þe meñ in
 þe werlde duellyng, 3it 3e ware vnable to agayne-stande hym.
 4 For þe foreluke of godd' mayntene3 hym, & vphalde3 hym. And
 þarefore dere soñ, it es my consell, 3our heghenesse of herte
 3e lefe, & fall sumwhate fra 3our glory, and bese fauorable to þe
 gretnes of Alexander. For better it es to forga þat at 3e may
 8 no3te halde, and haffe in pesse þan þat at 3e may halde, þan for
 too couett all and be excluded & for-ga all.' Wenh Darius
 redde þis lettre, he was gretly troubbled' and weped' bitterly,
 command' vn-till his mynde, his moder, his wyf, & his childer.
 12 ¹ In the mene tyme kyng Alexander remowed' his oste, and
 drew nere þe cite of Susis, in þe whilke Darius was lengand'
 the same tyme, so þat he my3te see all þe heghe hille3 þat ware
 abownd þe citee. Pan Alexander commanded' all his meñ, þat
 16 ilkan of þam suld cutte downe a brawnche of a tree, and bere
 þam furth wit þam & dryfe bi-fore þam alle manere of beste3 þat
 þay my3te fynde in þe way. And when the Percyenes saw þam
 fra þe heghe hille3 þay wondred' þam gretly. And Alexander come
 20 wit his oste to þe citee of Susis and lused hym nere besyde þe
 citee. And than he called' his prynce3 & his oþer lorde3 and
 said vn-to þam, 'Late vs,' quop he, 'send a messangere to kyng
 Darius & bidd' hym ² owþer & com feghte wit vs or effs *submyt
 24 hym vn-till vs.' The nexte nyghte after, Godd' Amōd apperede
 vn-till Alexander in his slepe bryngand' hym þe figure of Mercuri
 & a mantill, and anoþer manere of garment of Macedoyne, and
 saide vn-till hym. 'Alexander, soñ,' quop hee, 'euer mare wen
 28 þou hase nede, sañ I helpe the. And þarefore luke þou sende
 noghte to Darius þat messangere þat þou spake off. For I wiþ
 þat þou thi selfe clethe thee wit my figure & wende thedir þi
 selfe; if alle it be perilous for to do, Dred þe na thyng, for
 32 I sañ be thi helpe, so þat þou sañ hafe na maner of disesse.

On þe morne wenh Alexander rase fra slepe, he was gretly
 comforted' of his dreame & called till hym his prynce3 and
 talde þam alle his dreame, and þay assentede alle, þat he schulde
 36 wende to Darius in his propir person. And onane he called' vn-
 till hym ane of þe prince3, þe whilke highte Emulus. This

selling him
 to lower
 himself
 somewhat
 and yield
 to Alex-
 ander's
 greatness
 rather
 than
 lose all.

Alexander
 comes to
 Susa, driv-
 ing before
 him a
 crowd of
 beasts. He
 decides to
 send a mes-
 senger to
 Darius.

* Leaf 18
 bk.

The Vision
 of God
 Amōn in
 the night,
 who tells
 Alexander
 to go
 alone to
 Darius in
 his figure.

¹ Four lines with large red capital I;
 small i written in margin.

² hym inserted afterwards in left-hand
 margin.

Alexander
rides with
a single
knight to
the River
Grancus
which was
frozen over.

He will not
allow his
knight to
fare further
with him.

The river
ever freezes
in the
night and
thaws in
the morn-
ing.

The Per-
sians are
amazed at
him. Alex-
ander
comes to
Darius and
summons
him to give
tribute or
fight.

prynce was a wyghte man, & an hardy & wonder trewe tilt
Alexander. And þan Alexander bad hym lepe one a horse, and
brynge wit hym a noper horse & folow hym. And he didd' so.
And when þay come to gedir to þe water of Graunte, þat in þe 4
langage of Perse es called Struma, þay fande it frosen ouer, and
Alexander onane chaunged he¹ wede, & lefte þe foresaid' prynce
wit twa horse at þe water-syde and hym selfe, wit þe horse þat
he satt apouð, went ouer þe water apouð þe Ys³, towarde þe citee of 8
Sosis. And his prynce besoghte hym þat he walde suffre hym
wende wit hym, ne perauenture any disesse felle hym by þe
waye. And Alexander ansuerd' & sayde, 'Habyde me here,' quop
he, 'For he saß be my helpere, whan in dremez I sawe appere 12
vn-to me.' This ilke water I spake of bi-fore, all þe wynter seson
ilke a nyghte was frosen all ouer; bot tymely in þe mornynge als
sone als þe warme son smate apouð it, þan it dissoluede agayne,
& ran wonder swiftly; þe brede of þat water es þe space of a 16
furlange. When Alexander come to þe 3ate of þe citee the
Perciens, when þay saw hym, hadd' grete wonder of his figure,
and wend' he hadd' bene a godd', and onane þay asked' hym what
he was? And he ansuerd', and said' he was a messangere sent 20
fra kyng Alexander to paire lorde Darius, and be-lyfe þay broghte
hym til hym. Darius, when Alexander come bi fore hym, said
vn-til hym. 'Whethyð ert þou,' quop he? 'I ame,' quop
Alexander, 'sent vn-to þe fra kyng Alexander to wiete where 24
to þou taries to come tilt hym to gyffe hym batelle. Owthir
come & feghte manfully wit thyne enemys or eßs submitte þe
tilt hym & * pay² hym tribute.'

* Leaf 19.

And Darius heard him and said, 'Art thou then the Alexander 28
who with such madness shaped thy speech, for I see thou
holdest thyself not from words as a messenger doth, but art
bold as a king. Yet know that by thy words I am not
frightened at all. Come dine with me this day.' And with 32
these words, he reached out his hand to him and took him by
his right, and led him into the palace. And Alexander,
musing, began to say: 'A right good token hath this barbarian
wrought me when he clasped my right hand and drew me into 36

¹ MS. reads 'he'. We ought perhaps to substitute 'his'.

² Pay him tribute is written at the

bottom of leaf 18; between that leaf and what is now leaf 19 a whole leaf is missing.

the palace, because, as the gods say sooth, ere long the palace shall be mine.' And going in, Darius and Alexander lay by a table, and the daintiest feast was laid out. And Darius' 4 marshall gazed hard at Alexander face to face. And the table was wreathed in cleanest gold. But the Persians, seeing Alexander's shape, yet knew nothing of what wisdom, doughtiness, and strength lurked in this small body. The dishes and tables 8 and seats were wrought of the finest gold. The cup-bearers bore cups in golden vessels and rarest jewels. And when a cup was handed to Alexander, he hid it in his breast. And another cup was brought to him and he did the same, and thus too with 12 a third. And those who bore the cups, seeing this, gave the news to the Emperor Darius. And he, hearing of it, rose up, saying: 'Friend, what is this that thou doest, hiding the cups in thy breast?' And Alexander: 'In our king's feasts the 16 guests are wont, whenever they will, to take their drinking-vessels. But, as this seemeth to you unworthy, I will give them back forthwith.' And with these words he gave them back to the cup-bearers. But the Persians who sate at the 20 feast said each to each, 'a good custom, indeed, and one to be praised.' And some lords, too, praised this way and exalted it. But one of the Princes of Darius, called Anapolus, sitting at the feast, gazed hard at Alexander and his face. For he had seen 24 him when, at Darius' bidding, he went into Macedonia to take tribute of Philip. He, knowing his voice and looking on his face, began to think to himself and say: 'Is this not Alexander?' And rising at once he drew near to Darius, saying: 28 'This messenger whom thou beholdest is Alexander, the son of Philip of Macedon.' And Alexander, seeing them with each other in talk, knew they were speaking of him and he was known. And at this he rose up from his place and leapt away 32 from the board. And taking a blazing torch from a Persian's hand, himself mounted his palfrey, which he found ready outside Darius's palace, and fled in the swiftest flight. And the Persians seeing this, taking weapons, mounted their steeds with 36 a mighty stir, and quickly followed after Alexander. And in the darkness of the nightfall, they began to stray, some scratched their faces by the tree-boughs, some falling into ditches. But Alexander, bearing his blazing torch in hand, fared straight

The Feast of Darius and its magnificence.

Alexander hides the golden cups in his breast. Darius chides him. Alexander answers by giving them to the cup-bearers.

Alexander is recognized by one who had been in Macedonia. He tells Darius.

Alexander flees away and is pursued by the Persians. He escapes in the darkness.

Darius on his throne sees the golden image of Xerxes break, which foretokens the end of the Persian Empire.

Alexander swims the river, but his horse is lost.

forward. Now, Darius sate on his throne and thought of Alexander and how great his daring was. He saw a statue of gold of Xerxes the Persian king, who sate below the high-seat in the hall. And at once the statue broke and was all scattered 4 asunder. And Darius seeing this was smitten with heaviness of heart and began to weep sorely and long. And he said: 'This foretokeneth the wasting of my life, and the utter downfall of the Persian kingdom.' Alexander, however, coming to 8 the river Grancus, found it swollen, and leapt athwart it. But ere he was over the stream burst its banks, and swept his horse away; with great hardship Alexander escaped and met Eumulus, his lord. And thus he went back to his army and 12 told them of Darius, how he had dealt with him, and the torch with which he had fled away.

HOW ALEXANDER PUT HEART INTO HIS HOST ANEW.

Alexander gathers his army.

And on the following day, he gathered his army, which told two hundred and twenty thousand of weaponed men. And 16 he went up

* * * * *

* Leaf 19.

Alexander's harangue to his men, telling them to have trust in their own bravery.

*on a hye place & comforthed his men and said vn-to þam: 'þe multitude of þe percienes,' quop he, 'may noȝte be euened to þe multitude of þe greckes. For sewrly we are ma þan þay. And 20 if þay were ane hundreth sythes maa theñ wee, late noȝte ȝour hertis faile ȝow þarefore. For I telle ȝow a grete multitude of flyes may do na harme tiff a fewee waspes.' And when þe Oste had herde thire wordes þay commendide hym halelely wit a 24 voyce.

Darius crosses the river Grancus with a mighty army and meets Alexander in battle.

¹ Thañ þe emperour Darius remowed his oste, and come to þe reuere of Graunt on þe nyghte, and went ouer on þe ysȝ, and þar he lugeð hym. The Oste of Darius was wonder grete and 28 strange. For þay hadd in þaire oste X^m cartes ordaynd For þe werre, and grete multitude of Olyfanteȝ, wit towres of tree on þam, stuffed wit feghtyng men. And sone after appon a day thir twa kynges wit þaire osteȝ mett samen 32 on a faire felde, Darius wit his men, and Alexander wit his men.

¹ Four lines with large cursive ornamental T of new type and decorative style.

Than Alexander lepte apou his horse, þat highte Buctiphalas, and rade furthe bi-fore all his oste, and houed in þe myddes waye bi-twene þe twa osten. And when þe Percyenes saw hym, 4 þay had grete wonder of hym, and ware riȝte ferde for hym, by cause he was so vggly. Neuere-þe-lesse þay tromped vp & went to-warde Alexander. And sone þe bateill ioyned; & faghte to-gedir fersely, and many meñ dyed on ayther party; þare was so 8 thikke schott of arowes, þat þe ayer was couerde, as it had bene wit a clowde. Some faghte wit swerdeȝ, sum wit speres, sum wit axes, & sum wit arowes. Þe felde lay full of folke, sum dede, sum halfe-dede, & sum greuously wounded. Thay began 12 for to feghte at þe soñ-rysunge, and faghte to þe soñ-settingg. Bot þare dyed many ma of þe Percyenes þan þare dide of Macedoyns.

Alexander mounts Bucephalus and rides between the two armies. The Persians are afraid of his ugliness. The battle begins and lasts the day. The Persians lose more than the Greeks.

And when Darius sawe his meñ falle so thikke in þe felde, he 16 lefte þe felde, and fledd; and þe Percyenes seying that, þay fledd also. Bot þan þaire cartes of werre rane amange þe Percyens & slewe of þam folke wit-owte nowmer & namely of fote-meñ. For by þat tyme it was myrke nyghte, and þay ne myȝte noȝte see 20 for till eschewe þam. When Darius come* to the foresaid watere he fande it frosen, and ouer he went. And when he was ouer, þe oper lordes of perse went apou þe ysȝ, so grete a multitude þat þay couerde þe ysȝ fra þe taa banke to þe toper, 24 & þat a grete brede, & þan onane þe ysȝ brake als sone als Darius was paste ouer, & all þat ware on þe ysȝ ware perischte, ilk a moder soñ, & drowned in þe water. Þe remanaunt, when þay come to the water, þay myȝte noȝte wyn ouer. And þan þe 28 Macedoynes come, & dange þam downe. In this bateille þare was slaen of þe Percyenes ccc^m wit-owteñ thase þat were drowned.

Darius flees and his flight causes the confusion of his army.

*Leaf 19 bk. He crosses the ice, but his Lords are drowned in its breaking.

Kyng Darius fledd to þe citee of Susis, & went in till his 32 palace, & fette downe to þe grounde, & sigheand & wepande wit a sare hert, he said theis wordes: 'Allas, full wa es me, vnhappye wriche, þat euer I was borne, for þe ire & þe indignaciou of heuen es fallen one mee. For I Darius þat lifte 36 my seluen vp to þe sternes, Now am I broghte lawe to þe erthe. Now es Darius, þat conquerede all þe Este nacyns, & made þam subiecte & tributaries vn-till hym, fayne for to flee fra his enemys and submytte hym vn-to þam. And it ware

Darius flees to the city of Susa. He bewails his lot, for he is fallen from his greatness. He moralizes on the present and futures, and quotes sacred passages.

knawen vn-to þe wreched mañ, what schulde falle tiff hym after-wardez, he schulde hafe littiff thoghte of þe tyme presentt, bot one þe tyme to come solde his thoȝte be. In a poynte of a daye it falles, þat þe meke es raysede vp to þe clowddez, and þe 4 prowde es putt to noȝte.' And when he hade saide thir wordes, he rase vp, & satt & wrate a lettre vn-till Alexander, sayande on this wyese.

He writes to Alexander.

He praises the great wisdom of Alexander, who even knows what is to come.

Nevertheless he reminds him of his earthly birth, and warns him against pride. For often the end of a man ill accords with the beginning. He reminds him of the fate of Xerxes.

Darius demands his mother, wife, and children, offering therefor his treasure and the kingship over the Medes and Persians.

¹ 'Tiff his lorde Alexander, kyng of Macedoyne, Darius, kyng 8 of Perse, gretynge & Joy. We hafe wele vndirstanden by þat that we hafe herde of ȝowe and sene, þat ȝe hafe in ȝow grete wysedom & a hye witt: so þat noȝte allanly ȝe knawe thynges þat are present or passede, bot also thynges þat ere 12 for to come, and þarefore all thynges, þat ȝe doo: ȝe do it wit-owten any lakke or repreue. Neuer-þe-lesse hafeȝ in mynde þat riȝte as wee ware, so ware ȝe geten & borne of a fleschly woman. And þare fore rayse noȝte ȝour herte to hye 16 bi-cause of ȝour prowessche & ȝour doghty dedis, so þat ȝe forȝete ȝour laste ende. For ofte tymes we see þat þe lattere end of a mañ discordes wit þe firste. It sufficeȝ tiff a wer-ryoure for to gete þe victorie of his enemys, þofe all he 20 schewe noȝte alle þe malice þat he may. Remembre ȝow of þe wirchipfull kyng ȝerses oure progenytour, þat many victoryes gatt & schane in alle prosperiteez, Be-fore he raysed his hert in pride passande mesure. Alle þe wirchippe þat he hadd 24 wonn be-fore, he loste in Ellada, þarefore remembre ȝow, þat all þe wirchipes & þe victoryes þat ȝe hafe geten by þe forluke of ² godd'

* * * * *

ye got this victory. To us then who beseech grant your 28 mercy. Yield us our mother, our sons, and wife, and we will render unto you the treasures we have in Aydem and Susa and Batram, the which our fathers hoarded and hid in earthen cellars. And we will give you the kingship of the Medes and 32 Persians, that thus ye may have and keep what victory Jove the all-mighty hath granted you.'

¹ Four lines space with decorated miniature T.

² 'by þe forluke of godd' is written at the bottom of leaf 18 bk. Between this leaf and what is now numbered leaf 20

a whole leaf is missing; and we are plunged into the middle of quite a different letter of Darius on leaf 20, which is addressed to Porus.

HOW THE MESSENGERS OF DARIUS GAVE ALEXANDER THE
LETTER, AND HIS ANSWER.

The messengers of Darius coming then to Alexander gave him the letter, which Alexander read soon before them all. Then one of his chieftains, called Parmerion, said to Alexander :

- 4 'Most mighty emperor, take all the wealth which Darius
covenants unto thee, and give back to him his wife and sons.'
And, hearing this, Alexander called to him the messengers of
Darius, and before all spoke thus, saying: 'Tell ye to your
8 emperor we wonder first that he misdeemed his mother, wife,
and sons to be betrayed by our hands. If he be overcome,
bid him not promise us a reward. If he bow himself to our
yoke, all his honours and the majesty of God shall be laid
12 bare to our sway. If he be not overcome, let him do us
battle once again.' This said, he gave them rich gifts and
sent them forth away. Then he bade the soldiers take up
and gather the bodies of the dead and bury them in graves:
16 and he bade them heal those that were wounded.

A noble of
Alexander
counsels
him to ac-
cept these
terms. But
he will not.
But bids
Darius
either
submit
himself or
do battle.

He orders
the dead to
be buried.

HOW ALEXANDER ENCAMPED BY THE STREAM GRANCUS.

- Then he encamped with his host by the stream of Grancus,
and wintered there some days. And there he offered up
victims to the gods. And about the river there were palaces,
20 and they were the fairest, raised up with greatest skill, and
Xerxes the King of the Persians had built them. Alexander,
seeing them, bade them be burned. And soon after this,
stirred by ruth, he gave word none should dare touch them.
24 And there too was a most fair and very wide field in which
the Kings and Deemsters of Persia were of old buried. And
digging into this field the Macedonians found in the graves
gemmed vases. And there they found the grave of Ninus the
28 King of Assyria and Persia, which was hollowed out of a
single amethyst, and engraven on the outside with palm-leaves
and sundry kinds of birds. And so bright was the amethyst
that even from the outside the man's body appeared whole.
32 And in this place was a narrow and evil tower on which
stood many men, some with cut legs, some with broken
thighs, some with torn hands, and some blinded. They hearing

He en-
camps with
his army
by the
Grancus
and sacri-
fices.
Alexander
commands
the palaces
to be burnt.
The bury-
ing-place
of the
Kings and
Judges of
Persia,
wherein
treasure is
found. The
grave of
Ninus and
its won-
ders. The
Tower
of the
Maimed
Men.

They be-
sech
mercy of
Alexander,
who re-
stores them
to their
own.
For they
were nobles
dispossessed
by
Darius.

the noise of the armed men cried out to Alexander, who hearing their cries, bade them be taken thence. And seeing them was struck with ruth and wept, and bade each one be given ten thousand drachmas, and be restored every one to his own. For Darius kept them in prison, since they were of noble birth, and awarded all their possessions to his thralls. In the meantime the messengers from Alexander to Darius told all that Alexander had said. And Darius hearing this began to get ready for the fight. And he wrote another letter to Porus King of India, which runneth as follows:—

Darius'
letter to
Porus,
King of
India.

THE LETTER SENT BY DARIUS TO PORUS KING OF
INDIA.

He asks
him again
for help
against
Alexander,
since he
has re-
solved to
fight to the
very death.
For it is
better to
die in the
field than to
see the end
of his king-
dom and
people.

'Darius King of the Persians to Porus King of Our Indians joy. We asked but lately of you, and again we ask you to come and help against those who strive to overthrow our palace. We know well also that the like harm will light on you. For this Alexander, who fighteth thus, hath an unquenchable and wild soul, which like a lion ceaseth not, and is like the sea when stirred by mighty winds. Furthermore, unwillingly though it be, we have gathered numberless races, and we have taken our counsel to fight with him to the very death.

20

* Leaf 20.

Darius
writes to
Porus to
succour
him for the
sake of
himself, his
dynasty,
and his
people,
promising
him help
and the
spoils of
Alexander.
He warns
him that as
Alexander
had done
to him, so
would be
done to
Porus.

* better vs es for to dy manly in þe felde þan for to see þe mescheffe of oure pople & þe dissolaciō of oure rewme. Wherefore, hafand' reward' and compassion' of oure disesse, we be-seke 3ow, þat 3e late oure prayeres sattell in 3our hert, ²⁴ & helpe for to succour vs now at oure nede, hafand' in 3oure mynde þe grete noblaye of oure progenytours. And I seure 3ow þat [I sall] giffe ilke a fote-man' þat comez wit 3ow, thre pece3 of golde, And ilke a horse-man', fyve pece3 of golde, ²⁵ And also mete & drynke ynoghe to 3ow & all 3our men. And whare so 3e lugge 3ow, we schaffe fynde 3ow a hundreth & fourscore tentes curyously wroghte. And also we schaff giffe 3ow Alexander horse Buktyphalas, and alle appairail', ³² & þe araye þat langes till Alexander hallely schaff be 3ours and also all þe spoylle of his folke schall be dalte amange3 3oure folke. Wherefore we beseke 3ow þat also soñ als this

lettre commeȝ to ȝow, ȝe haste ȝow tiȝ vs in all þat ȝe may.
For wite ȝe wele for certayne, that riȝte als he done tiȝ
vs, so he purpose hym in tyme comynge for to do to ȝowe.'

4 ¹In the men tyme, certane men of Darius went fra hym
& come tiȝ Alexander, & talde hym, þat Darius purposede
hym for to feghte wiȝ hym estesones, and had sent tiȝ Porus,

Alexander
hearing of
this
through
treachery
marches
against
Darius.

8 When Alexander herd þis, be-lyfe he remowed his Oste to
ward Darius, thynkand in his herte þat he wolde on na wyse
take apoȝd hym þe name of Emperour be-fore he hadd wouȝd
Darius and his rewme one werre. And when Darius herde

12 of þe comynge of Alexander, he dredd hym gretly & þe
percyenes also. Bot þare was two prynceȝ of Darius, of þe
whilke þe tane highte Bisso & þe toper Ariobarsantes, thir
twa when pair ²herd of þe comynge of Alexander, conspyred

Two nobles
of Darius
conspire to
slay him
that they
may have
reward of
Alexander.

16 to-gedir for to slaȝ paire lord Darius, supposynge for tiȝ hafe
a grette thanke of Alexander, and a gret reward for paire dede.

And ayther of þaȝd ware sworne tiȝ oper. And thaȝd thay
went to þe kynges palace, and come intiȝ his chamber wiȝ

20 drawen swerdes in paire handeȝ, and fand Darius bi hym
ane. And when Darius saw that, he trowed wele þat þay
wolde sla hym, And said vn-to þaȝd: 'Dere frendeȝ, hedir

Darius see-
ing them
begs for
mercy, and
foretells
the future
vengeance
of Alex-
ander. But
they slay
him.

to wardeȝ hafe I called ȝow my seruauȝdeȝ, bot now I call ȝow

24 my lordes. What ayles ȝow at me þat ȝe wiȝ sla me? Haes
Alexander cheriste þe macedoynes mare þaȝd I hafe done ȝow?

Hafe I noȝte sorow & disese ynoghe of enemyse wiȝ-owtten?
Bot if ȝe conspire agaynes me for to sla me wiȝ owtten gilt,

28 I say for sothe, & ȝe sla me *thus preuelye, And Alexander
may gete ȝow, he wiȝ take mare cruell vengeance one ȝow, then
on any theues. For sothely it es na comforthe ne lykyng tiȝ

* Leaf 20
bk.

ane Emperour to fynd an oper Emperour murthered wiȝ his awȝd

32 men.' Bot þay were na-thyng stirrede to petee, ne tendernesse,
ne mercy, thurgh his wordeȝ, Bot went tiȝ hym and wiȝ grette

cruelnesse smate hym, & al-to magle hym, and went faste paire
waye, & lefte hym for dede.

36 ³And when Alexander herd tell þat Darius was slayne he

Alexander
hearing of

¹ Five lines space with a capital I.

² MS. *pair* for *pay*, just as on leaf 34,
1. 23. Cf. Icelandic *þeir*. There is no mis-

take here, as the two spellings vary *paire*
and *pair* on leaves 34, 54.

³ Four lines with red capital A.

his death
enters
Susa with-
out resist-
ance.
The con-
spirators
hide them-
selves.

Alexander
goes to the
room
where
Darius lies
dying.

Alexander
has pity
on Darius
and pro-
mises him
all he once
had if he
will but
live.

Alexander
says he
would
rather give
his own
Empire to
Darius
than be-
hold him
dead.

* Leaf 21.

Darius em-
braces
Alexander.

Darius'
speech to
Alexander
on the
worthless-
ness and
unstead-
fastness of

went ouer þe water of Graunt, and all his Oste wit hym, and
come to þe cetee of Susis. And alsone als þe Percyenes saw
hym, Thay Opened þe zates of þe citee, & rescheyued hym wit
grete wirchipe. And when þe pryncez þat slewe Darius wiste 4
þat Alexander was comen in-to þe citee þay went & helde þam
in hidils ay till þay myzte gete knaweynge of Alexander witt,
as towchand þat that þay hadd done to Darius. Alexander þam
went in-to þe kynges Palace, and as he went þare-in he 8
merueyled hym gretly of þe biggyng þare-off. For Cirus þe
kyng of Perse gert bigg it ryally. And the pament þareoffe
was made of stanes of dyuerse colours, & þe walles all enueround
wit fyne golde & precyous stanes & sternes lyke to þe firmament, 12
and pelers of golde þat bare vp þe werke. When Alexander
saw all this curious werke, he meruailed hym gretly. And
than he went to þe chambre þare Darius laye halfe dede.
And alsone als he saw hym he hadd grete rewthe & compassion 16
of hym, and he tuke off his awenð mantill & couerd [hym] þare-
wit, & went and graped his wondes and wepid for hym ryzt
tenderly, & said un-til hym. 'Rise vp, sir Darius,' quop he, '&
be of gude comforthe. And als frely as euer þou reioysede thyñ 20
Empire, so mot þou zitt do, And be als myghty, & als gloryouse
als euer þou was. I swere the here by oure myzty goddes & by
þe faythe in my body, þat here I resigne vn-to the all thyñ
empyre, desyrand souerayngly for to hafe þe lyfe of the, as þe 24
soñ of ¹ þe Fader, For sekerly it es vnfitand & unsemly till ane
emperour for to be reioysede of an oþer emperours mescheffe &
disesse, when fortune hase forsaken hym. Telle me, sir, what
þay are þat hase thus fareñ wit the, and I sewre þe als I am 28
trew man I sail venge the to þe uttereste.' And * when
Alexander had said this & mekill mare, Sare wepand Darius
putt furthe his hande, and layde his arme abowte Alexander
nekke, and kyssed his breste, his nekke, & his hande, & saide 32
thir wordez, thare that here folowes. ² 'A, dere soñ Alexander,'
quop he, 'als thi heghe witt knawes wele, all this werlde es
corrupt and sett in malice. For þe souerayne forlue of godd,
all thynges knawande fra þe begynnynge, and hafand felyng 36
of þe wirkynges for to come, made man in that wyse, at þe

¹ þe is written in above the line in the MS.

² Four lines miniature with ornamented red capital A.

- begynnynge, þat nathing es in hym stable ne faste. So þat all thynges þat ere passande & werldely, fra þat he faile of governance, tournes alsoñ till hym in contrarye. For if godd' hadd' ordeyned all thynges esy to mañ and alwaye wit-owtten chaungynge sent hym prosperitee, mañ schulde be lyftede vp so hie in pryde & in vayne glorye, þat he solde nozte arett alle his wele-fare & his welthe vn-to godd', bot till his awenñ desert & his awenñ vertu. And so schulde meñ gaa fra paire makare. On þe toper syde if þe heghe wyssedom of godd' hadd' made þe werlde oñ þat wyse þat all illes and infelicytes fell apoñ mañ wit-owtten any maner of gudenesse, so many freletese sulde folow
- 12 þe kynde of mañ, þat we schulde all be drawen in-to þe gilder of disparacioñ, so þat we solde hafe na triste in þe gudnes of godd'. And þarefore grete godd' wolde so wisely skifte all thynges, þat, when a mañ full of felicitye, thurgh his heghe
- 16 pride will nozte knawe his makere, Fra þe heghte of pride in-to þe pitte of mekenes & lawnes he moñ be plungedede. So þat he þat thurgh pride & felicitye forgatt his godd', thurgh fallynge in wrechidnesse & disesse hafe mynde of his godd'. Reghte als þou
- 20 may see bi me, my dere soñ Alexander, þat was raysede vp so hye in pride & vayne glorye, thurgh riches & prosperitee þat felle vn-to me, þat I trowed nozte þat I was goddes creature bot goddes Felawe. And þañ, thurgh blyndenes of pride,
- 24 I couthe nozte see that, þat now, thurgh scharpenesse of mekenes and meschaffe, I see clerely & knawes. Bot if it happen þat any mañ be vmbilappede wit grete infelicitee, so þat he, despairand of þe grace of godd', supposse na remedy, ne nane lukes eftere;
- 28 * þañ oure lorde godd' raysez hym vp to þe heghte of prosperitee, so þat þañ he, þat bi-cause of wrechidnes & infelicitee, myzte nozte see godd' ne knawe hym, thurgh felicitye & prosperitee knawes þat he, þat may bryng a mañ to lawe state, may rayse
- 32 a mañ till heghe degree. And he þat may rayse a mañ till heghe degree, may putt hym to lawnesse agayne, when hym lyst, and þarefore, soñ, late nozte thy hert ryse to hye in pride, for þe victoryes þat godd' hase sent the, if all þou may do now whate þe
- 36 list ryzt as [¹ þou] were a godd'. Bot alway thynke on thy laste ende. For þou ert a dedly mañ, and ilk a day if þou be-halde graythely þou may see thy dedd' bi-fore thyñ eghne. Consedirs

all earthly things,

with particular application to himself.

On the presumption of those who have
* Leaf 21 bk.
great wealth.

On the power of God to put down the mighty from their seats, and to lift up them of low degree.

¹ þou may have been left out by the scribe beginning a new line.

Darius asks
burial of
Alexander,
and that
both
peoples
should
comethere-
to. And
wills there-
to that both
empires be
one. He
bids him be
merciful to
his widow,
and take
his daugh-
ter Roxana
to wife. He
dies.

Alexander
buries
Darius in
royal state.
He bears
the bier
himself.
The Mace-
donians
and the
Persians go
before it.
Alexander
seats him-
self on the
* Leaf 22.

throne of
Cyrus, and
is crowned
with the
crown of
Darius.

The throne
of seven
steps with
its mystic
meanings
inwrought.

pou nozte how oure lyffe may be lykkened to þe werke of Eranes,
pat so sotelly makes paire webbes? Bot alsoñ als a little blaste
of wynde puffes apouñ þamñ, þay breke, & falles to grownde. Be-
halde & see how gloriūs I was 3isterday & how wrechede I amñ 4
to-day, & how law I am broghte. I was lorde nerehande of
all þe werlde, & now I hafe na power of myñ aweñ selfe.
Now I be-seke the, soñ, þat þou wilt bery me wit thy
benynge handes. And suffre for to come to myñ exequise bathe 8
þe Macedoynes and þe persyenes. And fra this tyme forwardz,
þe empire of Macedoyne & þe empire of perse be bathe ane.
Haffe recomend vn-to the my Moder Rodogoñ, & trete hir
wirschipfully as thyñ awenñ Moder. And I be-seke þe also, 12
þat þou be Mercyable to my wyfe. And if ¹ it be lykynge to þe,
take Rosañ my dogheter to thi wyfe. For semely it es, þat 3e
be ioynede to-geder þat er comenñ of so wirschipfull progenitours,
For þou of kyng Philippe, and scho of kyng Darius. And of 16
3ow twa may a wirschipfull & a noble fruyte sprynge.' And
ri3te as he had saide thir wordez he swelt in Alexander armes.
Kyng Alexander, þañ, after þe custonñ was for to bery
emperours, gert araye Darius body als ryally as he couthe. 20
And wit all þe solempnyte and wirschipe þat myghte be done,
he helped hym selfe for to bere þe bere, sare wepande, and
gert þe Macedoynes & þe Percyenes gaa bi-fore þe bere. The
persyenes also weped wonder faste, nozte allanly for þe dede 24
of Darius, bot for petee of paire hertis, þat þay saw Alexander
wepe so enterely. And whenñ Darius was beriedñ Alexander
went agayne to þe palace.

² And one þe morne Alexander went and sett hym in a trone 28
all of golde & precyous stanes, the whilke Cyrus sumtyme gert
* make þat was kynge of Perse. And the Macedoynes and þe
Persyenes sett apouñ his hede a coroune þat was Darius, þe
whilke was so precyous, þat meñ knewe nane like it in na lande. 32
For all þe palace schane thurgh bryghtness of þe precyous
stones, þat were sett þare-in. And þe trone was all of golde,
& of precyous stanes, & of þe sege þare-offe was vii seuen³ cubete3
heghe fra þe grounde, and a grece of seuenñ gree3 was made 36

¹ it written in above by the scribe.

² Two lines space with miniature A.

³ 'vii' occurs at the end of one line, and 'seven' at the beginning of the next.

pare-to, whare-by kynges ascended pare-to. And thir gree; were made wonder craftyly & curiously. The firste gree was of ane amatist. The seconde gree was of a Smaragd. The thredd
4 gree was of a Topaz. The ferthe gree was of a granat. The fifte was of ane adamañd. The sext was of fyn golde. And the seuent was of clay. And thay ware noȝt ¹[wit-o]wtten grete cause; ordeyned one þis wyse.

The first step of amethyst, that a king be not drunken but walk soberly and steadfastly. The second of emerald, that a king see well those things which belong to his rank. The third of topaz, which reminds him of his latter end, showing him upside down. The fourth of garnet, which makes him shame to do unlawfully. The fifth of diamond, which means that a king should be righteous. The sixth of gold, to show the greatness of kings.
* Leaf 22 bk.
The seventh of clay, to

8 For þe first gree w[as a]ne ²amatist, for amange all oper stanes it hase this vertu, that it represses & haldez donne þe fumositee of wyne & þe myghte pare-offe, & suffers noȝte a mañ þat bere it ³on hym be troubbled in his witt ne in his mynde
12 thurgh drownkeness. And, on þe same wise, solde ilke a kyng be of perfite witt & mynde, & thurgh nane occasiõ do na mysse. The secundu gree was of a Smaragd, þe whilke clarifyez & kepez þe sighte of hym þat beres [it] apõn hym, and so schulde
16 a kyng hafe clere sighte of his hert, wysely for to see & discerne that þat es spedfull & profitable bathe for hym selfe & for þe comon profit. The thirdd gree was of a Topaz, þe whilke es so clere, þat & a mañ bi-halde hym selfe pare-in, it sañ seme
20 tiñ hym, as his hede ware tournede downwardez, and his fete vpwardez; And it be-takenes þat a kyng schulde alway take hede tiñ his laste ende. The ferthe gree was of a Granat whilk passez all manere of precious stanes in reedness: & betakens
24 þat a kyng suld be schamfull for tiñ consent tiñ any thyng þat es vnlefull. The fifte was of ane Adamande. Þe Adamande es so harde þat it may noȝte be broken nowþer with yreñ ne wit stane, bot if it firste be enoynted wit gayte blode. On þe same
28 wyse a kyng suld be of so grete constance & sadnesse þat, for na prayere, ne for na worldely gude, he solde noȝte bewgh fra þe way of ryght-wisnesse. The sexte gree was of fyne gold: for riȝte as gold passez all maner of metalle in bewtee, & in pre-
32 cioustee; riȝte so a kyng awe to be ⁴preferred before oper men & gouernours of þaĩd. * Þe seuent was of Clay, tiñ þat entent þat a mañ þat es raysed vp to þe dingnyte of a kyng sulde alway vmythynk hym þat he was made of erthe, & at þe laste

¹ Piece gone in MS. Reads —*witten*. The beginning of a *w* occurs before the hole, and the latter half of an *o* after it—so it must clearly be read '*witowtten*'.

² MS. *w* and a gap follows as above;

read, of course, '*was a*'.

³ *it* written in above line.

⁴ MS. has in another hand in bottom of margin '*preferred before*' written over again.

show him
above all
he is but
dust and
deathly.

to þe erthe he saff agayne. When Alexander was sett apou
this trone, coronnde wit his diademe, & þe Macedoynes & þe
persenes standyng abowte hym: be-fore þam alle he gert write
(a lettre tilf all cuntree, þat was of this tenour.

Alex-
ander's
letter to all
lands—ann-
ouncing
that he sits
on the
throne of
Darius.
He orders
that all
things
should be
as they
were
before.

¹ 'Alexander the son of godd Amou & qwene Olympias kyng
of kynges & lorde of lordes, tilf alle Dukes, Prynce, Erles,
Barons, maisters, & tilf all þe folke of Perse: ioi & grace. Seu
it es plesynge to godd, þat I sitt one þe trone of Darius, & be
lorde of þe persyenes, grete cause I hafe for to be reioyist gretely
þare-offe, ne were it for þe gret multitude of folke þat ere
slayne. Bot seu it so es þat godd hase ordeynede me to be þour
lorde,² and þour gouvernour, þare-fore we commande þow þat in
ilke a citee, thurghowte þe lordchipe of Perse, þe ordeyne
prynce and gouvernours as þare was in Darius tyme, to þe
whilke we commande þow þat þe be obeyande as þe before-tymes
hafe bene, and that þay do rihte tilf ilke a man at þaire powere. 16
Also it es oure wilf and oure commandement, þat ilke a man
welde & reioyse paysabily his landes and his possessiouns. We
commande alsoo, þat fra this lande of perse vn-tilf Ellada, & fra
thethyn to Macedoyne, be redy way & open so þat ilke a man 20
þat wilf may passe bathe in and owte, wit merchandysse or any
oper erandes þat þay hafe at do, and Joy & pese be vn-to þowe.'

He com-
mands
security of
tenure to
all, and free
trade be-
tween
Hellas and
all Persia.
Alexander
promises a
fitting re-
ward to
them that
slew
Darius.

³ þan gert Alexander all men be still, and said one this wyse:
'Whilke of þow so slew myn enemy Darius; come forth be-for 24
me, and I shaft giffe þow worthy mede, & conable wirchipe do
þam, I swere bi oure godde þat ere Almyty, & bi my moste
biloved moder Olympias, þat I saff giffe þam worthy mede.'
When Alexander had saide thir wordes þe persyenes wepede 28
wonderly sare. And than þe twa man-morthireres Bisso and
Aryobazantes come bi-fore Alexander, and sayde vn-tilf hym:
'Wirchipfull emperour,' quop þay, 'we ere thase þat slew
Darius thyne enemy wit oure Awen hende.' And when 32
Alexander saw þam, he hade his knyghtes belyfe ga & take
þam, & hynde* þam, & lede þam to Darius grafe, & þare
smyte of þaire heuedes. And than þay ansuerd, & saide
vn-tilf Alexander: 'A, A, wirchipfull emperour,' quop þay, 36

They de-
clare them-
selves.

* Leaf 23.
Alexander
bids them
be taken

¹ Ten lines blank space for a miniature.
² In MS. between 'be þour lorde' and
and þour gouvernour' is written 'a lorde

of þe persyenes', but it has been erased by
the scribe.

³ Three lines space with red capital p.

- 'swore pou noȝte tiȝt vs, bi oure goddeȝ þat ere Almyȝty, & bi þe hele of thi moder Olympias, þat pou solde gerre do vs na harme, bot þat pou solde giff vs a worthi reward.' And
 4 Alexander saide agayne vn-to þam: 'So aughte me wele for to swere, for to gette knawying of þe slaers of Darius. For I solde neuer hafe getyȝd knawying þare-offe had I noȝte sworne so. And
 8 ȝitt I saȝt safe myȝd athe wele ynoghe. For it was al-way myȝd entent, þat if I myȝte wete what þay ware, þay solde hafe swilke a rewarde. For þay þat slaes þaire awenȝd lorde it es a taken þat þay wiȝt hafe na conscience to sla anoȝer maȝd.' And when þe perseyenes herde this þay by-gaȝd to prayse Alexander
 12 & to commende hym and blysse hym as he had bene a godd. þam kyng Alexander gert hede tha twa homycydes. And aȝt þe rewme he sett in gouernance of certayne lordes. Amanges oȝer þare was ane alde lorde was eme to Darius, þe whilke
 16 highte Climitus, þat was gretly luffede wiȝt þe persyenes; And Alexander at þe request of aȝt the persyenes ordeyned hym for to be chefe gouernour vnder hym of aȝt perse. And one þe morne Alexander sett hym in his trone, wiȝt his corouȝd on his hede,
 20 and efter þe biddynng of Darius he commande to brynge bi-fore hym Rosaȝd, Darius doghter, wiȝt a corouȝd oȝd hir hede, sett full of precious stanes. And þare, as þe maner was of þe persyenes, he tuke hir to his wyfe, and made hir to sitt wiȝt hym in his
 24 trone & command aȝt meȝd to wirchipe hir als quene. And þam þe persyenes were wonderly glade, & onane þay broȝte þaire goddeȝ bi-fore Alexander, and bi-gaȝd to wirchipe hym, & loue hym riȝte als he hade bene a godd, and saȝd vn-till hym,
 28 hallely wiȝt a voyce, 'pou thi selfe es a godd, For that þat es plesande tiȝt oure goddes alway pou dose.' And when Alexander saw this, he was gretly troubled & riȝte ferde & saȝd vn-to þam: 'Wirchipfull sirs,' quop he, 'I pray ȝow þat ȝe
 32 wirchipe me noȝte as a godd, for sothely I am as ȝe are, a corupteble & a dedly maȝd, and in me þare es na parcell of the godhede. And þarefore, I beseke ȝow, cesseȝ of this wirchipe þat ȝe do me.'
- 36 ¹ Pan gert Alexander write a lettre tiȝt Olympias his moder & tiȝt Arestotle his maister, makand mencyoȝd of aȝt þe bataylis & þe dissesseȝ þat he hadd suffred in Perse, and of þe grete reches

and be-headed. They plead his own words. But it avails them nought.

They are slain. Alexander makes Darius' uncle governor of the Persians.

Alexander weds Roxana, Darius' daughter.

The Persians worship Alexander as a god.

He chides them for it.

Alexander writes to his mother and to Aristotle.

¹ Five lines with large capital p.

He com-
*Leaf 23
bk.

mands an
eight days'
feast for
the mar-
riage.

Alexander
marches
against
Porus of
India,
through
waste
country,
with great
rivers and
caverns.
The Mace-
donians
murmur at
the con-
tinued
wars and
marches,
and against
Alex-
ander's
ambition.
They fain
would
leave him.

King Alex-
ander
divides the
Mace-
donians
and the
Persians.

Alexander
rebukes the
Greeks
that they
would
leave him
alone with
rebellious
Persians.
He reminds
them of
what he
has done

pat he fande pare, of þe whilke he & all his meñ ware made riche. And also he wrate vn-to þam,* þat þay scholde make grete solempnytee lastyng aghte dayes be-cause of þe weddyng of Alexander & Rosan Darius doghter. And so did Alexander, 4 in Perse, wit þe macedoynes & þe persyenes, many a daye.

¹ Affter this kyng Alexander sembled a grete Oste, bathe of macedoyns & of persyenes, and went towarde Inde for to werre apouñ Porus, kyng of Inde, þe whilke ordeynede hym for to 8 come & helpe kyng Darius. And, when Alexander was entered in-till Inde, he went thurgh wildernes & waste cuntree, whare in ware grete reuers and many grete caues & cauernes. And þañ Alexander & his meñ wex wery, & irkede riȝte sare. And ¹² þe prynces of macedoyne & of grece murmourede amangeþ þam gretly, & saide ilkan till oper: 'It myȝte hafe sufficed till vs, þat we hafe ouer-sett kyng Darius, & conquerred þe kyngdom of Perse. Where-be seke we forthire in-till Inde, þe whilke es ¹⁶ full of wilde besteþ, and leues oure awenñ landeþ. Ne þis Alexander nane oper thynges desyreþ, bot for to wende abowte and thurgh werre to brynge all þe worlde vndere his subieccion. For werre & debate unrescheþ his body so fer furth þat, and he ²⁰ ristede any lange tyme witowten werre, riȝte als it were for defaute of mete he schulde faile & dye. Leue we hym þarefore, and turne we agayne vn-till oure awenñ cuntree, and late hym wende furthe wit the persyenes, if he wiȝt.' When ²⁴ Alexander herde þis, he garte all þe Oste habide, and he went and stodde in ane heghe place amangeþ þam, & sayde one this wise: 'Departis ȝow in twaa, so þat þe persyenes be by þam-selfe and þe Macedoynes and þe grekes bi þam-selfe.' ²⁸ And when þay hadd' so done, Alexander saide to þe Macedoynes and þe grekes: 'A A, myne owenñ dere knyghtis,' quop he, 'wele [ȝe] knawe þat thir persyenes, vn-to þis day, hase bene contrary & rebellis vn-to ȝow & to me, and ȝe wiȝt now lese me ³² here wit þam, and tourne agayne to ȝour awenñ cuntree. Wele ȝe wate, þat when ȝour hertes were troubbled, & fered, for þe wordes þat ware contened in Darius lettres, I thurgh my speche & my conseil comforted ȝour hertis. And afterwarde, when we ³⁶ come in-to þe felde agaynes oure enemys, I went bi-fore ȝow all.

¹ Four lines with miniature A with a springing from it. Small a written in the barrel drawn within on its side, and a tree margin beside it.

And I by myn ane was þe firste man þat entrede þe batayle.
 And ȝitt more-ouer, as ȝe wele wate, I tuke apoñ me for to be
 ȝoure allere messangere vn-to kyng Darius. And þare, for
 4 ȝow, I putt my selfe in many grete *perills. And þarefore,
 witteȝ wele for certayne, þat, riȝte as hedirtowardeȝ, we haue
 ouercomeñ oure enemys and hade þe better of þam, riȝte so fro
 heþein-forwardeȝ, thurgh þe helpe of oure goddeȝ we sañ ouer-
 8 come oure enemys, & haue þe victorye of þam. And þarefore I
 say ȝow forsothe, þat, all if ȝe will tourne agayne to grece &
 macedoyne, I sañ noȝte tourne agayne oñ na wyse, þat ȝe may
 knawe þat, wit-owtten gouernance of a kyng, nane Oste may
 12 wynne na wirchipe.' When Alexander had said þus, all þe
 prynceȝ of Macedoyne and of þe grekes schamede gretely, and
 askede mercy & forgifnesse, sayande one this wyse: 'Moste
 wirchipfull emperour, oure lyfe lyes hallely in ȝour hande.
 16 Whedir so euer ȝe wiñ goo we wiñ gladly felowe ȝour hye
 maistee; þofe we schulde all dye for ȝow oñ a daye, we sañ
 folow ȝow & neuer lese ȝow.' And þan þay remowed fra þeinne¹
 and come in-till a cuntree of Inde þat es called Phisiaceñ, in þe
 20 laste ende of July. And þare mette hym þe embassatours of
 Porus kyng of Inde, and broghte hym lettres fra Porus, þat said
 oñ this wyse.

² 'Porus kyng of Inde: vn-to þe theeffe Alexander, þat thurgh
 24 thifte & robbery many citeeȝ wyneȝ, biddyng we send. Señ
 þou ert dedely: wharto weneȝ þou þat þou ert of powere to
 agaynstande godd þat es vn-dedely. A grete fole, me thynke,
 þou ert þat hase eghne, and cane nott see. Trowes þou we be lyke
 28 vn-to þe Percyenes þat þou hase made subiecteȝ vn-to the? þou
 hase foughten hedir-towarde wit softe meñ & cowardeȝ, & for
 þou hase ouercomeñ þam, þou weneȝ, þat thi littillnesse sañ
 brynge oure hye maistee vnder thi subieccion; þe whilke es
 32 vnpossyble for to bee, bot if goddeȝ submytt þam vn-to meñ,
 and þe erthe be euen lyke to þe heuen. I late the wiete, þat I
 may noȝte be ouercommen for noȝte allanly meñ bot also goddeȝ
 doeȝ seruyce to my name. Wate þou noȝte wele, þat ane
 36 Dynise, þe fader of Bachus, come in-till Inde, wit a grete Oste
 for to feghte, bot onane he tournede þe bakke & fledd, for he

for them,
 and what
 they will
 do to-
 gether.

* Leaf 24.

But what-
 ever they
 do, he will
 go on-
 wards.

They be-
 come
 ashamed
 of them-
 selves
 and beg for
 forgive-
 ness.

They con-
 tinue their
 march and
 meet the
 ambas-
 sadors of
 Porus.

Porus'
 letter to
 Alexander.

He tells
 him of the
 superiority
 of the
 Indians to
 the Per-
 sians.

The gods
 also fight
 for India.
 The
 Indians
 overcame
 Dionysius.

¹ MS. reads *þeinne*.

² Four lines space for miniature *P*. *P* written in the page beside it.

He advises
him to go
back again
to Macedo-
nia.
Before
Xerxes'
time the
Macedo-
nians gave
tribute to
India, but
the Indians
recked

* Leaf 24
bk.

naught of
Macedonia,
for it was a
barren and
little land.

Alex-
ander's
knights are
troubled at
the letter.

He tells
them
Eastern
folks are
like wild
beasts
trusting
but in their
strength.

Alex-
ander's
letter to
Porus.
Porus'
words have
stirred on
the Greeks
to win so
great and
fruitful a
land as
India, as
well as to
crush
Porus'
pride.
For Porus
is but a

was nozte of powere to agaynstande þe vertu of meñ of Inde. And þarefore, or any schame or mischeffe com̄ to þe; we counsel the & commandeþ the, þat in all þe haste þat þou may, þou tourne hame agayne to thyne awen̄ lande. Fore wele þou 4 knowes, þat, bi-fore jerses was kynge of Perse, þe macedoynes gaffe tribute tilf Inde. Bot, by-cause þat paire lande es barayne & vnprofitable, & na thynges þer-in plesande tilf a kynge: þe meñ of Inde sett nozte þare-by. For ilke a mañ, 8 desyres mare a large lande & a plenteuous: þan *a straye lande & a barayne. And þarefore, ȝitt the thirde tourne, I comaunde the that þou tourne hame to thyne awen̄ lande. And neuer, in thi lyfe, couette to hafe Lordschipe þare þou may nane gete.' 12

¹ When þis lettre was comen̄ tilf Alexander, he gerte rede it be-fore all meñ. And when̄ his knyghtis hadd' herde þe tenour of þis lettre, þay were trublede. And Alexander sayde vn-to þaṁ: 'My wirchippfull knyghtis,' quop he, 'late nozte ȝour 16 hertis be trublede ne fered' for Porus lettre. Hafe ȝe nozte in mynde, wit how grete pride Darius wrate vn-tilf vs dyuerse tymes? I say ȝow sotheley þat all þe folke of thyse Este parties hase paire hertis & paire wittis lyke vn-to þe bestes þat þay 20 duefſe wit-all, þat es at say, Tygres, Pardes, & oþer wilde bestis, whilke full selden̄ ere slaen̄ of meñ, and þare-fore þay triste all in paire strengthe.' And when̄ Alexander hade said thir wordes, he garte writte a lettre vn-to Porus kynge of Inde 24 where-of this was the tenour.

² Kyng of kynges and lorde of lordes, Alexander þe soñ of godd' Amoñ & þe quene Olympias, vn-to Porus we sende. Þou hase scharpede oure wittes, & gyfſen vs hardynesse for to feghte 28 agaynes þe, where þou says þat macedoyne es bot a littil lande & barayne of all thyng þat gude es. And Inde, þou says, es large, & plenteuous of all gudeþ & reches. And þare-fore we sall enforce vs to feghte wit the at all oure myghte, for to con- 32 quere thi landes þat, þou sais, es so full of reches. And, for þou haldeþ vs pouer, & of na reputaciō, þare-fore we desire for to ascende to þe heghte of thi majestie. And also þare þou says, þat nozte allanly vn-to meñ, bot also vn-to goddes þou erte 36 emperour, I sall come to the, for to feghte wit þe, as wit an̄

¹ Three lines with miniature *W* and small *w* written alongside in the margin.

² Eleven lines blank space without either miniature or small letter at side.

haytheñ mañ full of Pompe & pride and vayne glory, & nozte
as wit a godd. For all þe werlde may nozte ¹agaynstand þe
wrethe of a godd. Per-fore, señ þe elementis of this aere, þat
4 es at say Thunners, leuenyngeꝝ and water, may nozte bere þe
indynacion of goddeꝝ, how schulde þañ dedely meñ mowe
agaynstande þaire wrethe? And þare-fore I late the * wele
witte þat þi founde proudd speche trubbleꝝ me nozte ne moueꝝ
8 me neuer a dele.'

heathen
man full of
pride.
He
threatens
him with
the wrath
of the gods.

* Leaf 25.

² When Porus hadd this lettre, he was wondere wrathe &
assemblede a grete Oste of meñ, and a grete multitude of
Olyphanntes wit þe whilke þe meñ of Inde ere wount for to
12 feghte, and went agaynes Alexander. This Oste of Porus was
riȝte grete & strange, for þare ware þer in xiiij. cartes of were
and viij^e Oliphantez, and ilk an Olyphante, hadd a toure of tree
apouñ his bakke, & in ilke a toure xxx meñ. Pare ware also
16 oþer feghting meñ on horse and on fote wit-owten nowmer.
And when þe Macedoynes and þe persyenes sawe þe grete
multitude bathe of meñ & of Olyphaunteꝝ, þay were fered, &
gretely stonayde. Neuer þe lesse, bathe þe partyes ordayned
20 þañ to batell, and arayed þaire batellis, Alexander on his syde,
and Porus on his syde. And Alexander lepe vp-on his horse
Buktiphalas & prikkede bi-fore all his meñ, and comanded,
þat þe Medoynes & þe persyenes sulde firste begynñ to feghte.
24 And so þay did; & hym selfe wit þe grekes, and þe macedoynes
stode on þe toper syde, redy to succour þañ when myster ware.
And for þe Olyphaunteꝝ also, Alexander gert make suyke añ
ordynance. He gert make xxiiij ymageꝝ of brasse, and gert fiȝt
28 þañ full of dry wodde. And he gerte make also cartes of yreñ,
for to bere thir ymageꝝ before þe Olyphaunteꝝ and when þe
Osteꝝ came nere to-gedir he gert sett fyre in þe wodd þat was in
þe ymages. And when þe Olyphaunteꝝ saw þir ymages, þay
32 wende þat þay hadd bene meñ and schott owte þaire groynes,
as þay were wount for to do for tiȝt hafe weryed þañ. And
alsone thurgh þe grete hete, þay were brynned and thañ thay
gaffe bakke, & fledd for drede to brynne þaire groynes. And
36 þare-fore þe meñ þat were abowñ in þe toures myghte nozte
wyñ to for to feghte. And when Porus saw that he was reghte

Porus is
angered at
the letter
and
gathers a
great army
with
elephants.
Its
numbers
and array.

Alex-
ander's
allies are
startled by
the appear-
ance of the
elephants
and the
Indian
army.

Alex-
ander's
device for
over-
coming the
elephants.

¹ *agaynstand* written in the margin, with a
mark of insertion over against it in the text.

² Four lines space with red capital *W*.
Small *to* in margin next it.

The allies
begin the
battle and
fight for
thirty
days.
When ex-
hausted
they are re-

* Leaf 25
bk.

placed by
the Greeks
and Mace-
donians.

Utter de-
feat of the
Indians
and flight
of Porus.

Siege and
capture of
Porus' city.
The riches
of Porus'
palace.

The walls
were plated
with gold
an inch
thick.

The palace
gates were
of ivory
and ebony.

The won-
ders of the
hall. The
golden
birds that
sang as
though
alive.

sary. Það þe Medoynes & þe persyenes, wit arowes and speres & oper dyuerse wapynes of werre, slewe thykfalde of þe meñ of Inde. And thus pay faghte contennelly xxx^{ti} days, & mekiff pople of bathe þe parties ware dede. And at þe laste þe 4 Medoynes, & þe persyenes, begañ faste for to fayle. And when Alexander saw that, he was wondere wrathe, and entrede in-to þe batellē, sittand on his horse Buctiphalas, *and faghte mann-fully, & þe grekes & þe macedoynes wit hym. And his horse 8 also helped hym gretely. And thañ belyfe þe Indynes begañ gretely for to fayle. And when Porus saw that he turned þe bakke & fledd. And það þe Indynes þat ware leste on lyfe fledd also. And Alexander lugeð hym thare wit his Oste and 12 made Sacrafice till his goddeȝ and commaunded for to bery þe dedd bodys, bathe of Indynes & of þe persyenes & þe Macedoynes.

¹ Sone after, apou a day, Alexander ensegged Porus citee & 16 want it, and went in-till Porus Palace, whare-In he fande² mare reches það any mañ wiff trowe. For he fande þare-in xl pelers of Massy golde, ilkan of a grete thikness & a grete lenthe, wit paire chapytraffes. And bitwene þe pelers of golde, 20 ware hyngande venetteȝ of golde & syluere, wit leues of golde. And þe brawncheȝ of this venett ware sum of cristalle, sum of Margariteȝ, sum of Smaragdes, & sum of Onyches, and pay semed as pay hade bene verray vynes. Þe walles also of þe 24 palace ware couerde all ouer wit plates of golde, þe whilke when þe Macedoynes cutte in soundre & brakke, pay fande þat pay ware a gret ynche thikke. And þir walles ware sett full of diuerse precious stanes, þat es at say, of charebuncles, Smaragdes, 28 Margarites & Amatistes. And þe zates of þe Palace ware of Euour wonder whitt, & þe bandeȝ of það, & þe legges of Ebene. Þe chambirs, also, of þis Palace, were all of Cipresse, and þe beddeȝ in það ware sett full of Margariteȝ, Smaragdeȝ, & 32 charebuncles. Þe hauñ, also, of þis Palace, was sett full of ymages of golde, & bi-twix það stode perlatanes of golde, in þe branches of whilke þare were many manners of fewles & ilke a fewle was coloured, & paynted after his kynde asked, þe 36 bekēs of það, & þe clowes ware all of fyne golde. And ay,

¹ Four lines with red capital ornate S, and small s in margin beside.

² MS. repeats *he fande* twice.

when Porus liste, thir fewles thurgh crafte of music walde syng after paire kynde askede & was. He fande also in þat Palace veselles wit-owten nowmer, sum of golde, sum of Cristaffe,
 4 Sum of oper maneres of precyouse stanes, sum of Siluere, and þat all maner of vesell þat men sulde be serued offe. Bot þare were bot fewe of þam of Siluere.

The riches of the treasury. There is but little silver.

¹ Fra thethynd, Alexander remowede his Oste & come to þe
 8 zates of Caspee, and þare he lused hym. It was a noble lande & a gude. Bot þare ware þare-In many maners * of nedders and of wilde bestez. Fra þeine Alexander sent a lettre till Talifride quene of Amazon, of þis tenour.

* Leaf 26.

12 ² 'Kyng of kynges, and lorde of lordes, Alexander, þe son of godd' Amōn, & þe quene Olympias, vn-to Talifride þe quene of Amazon, ioy. The grete Bataylles þat we hafe hadd wit kyng Darius, & how we hafe conquered all his rewme, and his
 16 lordchipes, we trowe be noghte unknowen vn-to þow. And also how we hafe foghten with Porus þe kyng of Inde & his cheeffe citee wonne. And also wit many oper folkes, & þay ware neuer of powere to agaynstande vs, þe whilke we suppose
 20 be noȝte vnknewen vn-to þowe. Wherefore we sende þow worde, & commandeþ þow, þat þe sende vs tribute, if þe wilt þat wee com noȝte to þow to do þow disesse.'

Alexander's letter to the Queen of the Amazons mentioning his victories and demanding tribute.

And vn-to this lettre Talifride made ansuere by lettre one this
 24 wyse.

The answer of the Queen of the Amazons. She has heard of his victory. She warns him of the danger of attacking the Amazons.

³ 'Talyfride quene of Amazon wit oper grete ladys of oure rewme, vn-till Alexander, kyng of Macedoyne, joy. We hafe wele herde telle of þe hye witt þat es in the, thurgh whilke þou
 28 hase in mynde thynges þat ere passede, and disposeþ thynges þat ere present, and knaweþ thynges þat ere to come. Avyse the wele þarefore are þou come till vs, what trebulacionnez & disesse may falle the in thi commynge. For þare was neuer
 32 nane ȝit þat werreyed agayne vs þat ne he had schame þare-offe at þe ende. And þarefore take hede to thi last ende. For grete schame it es till a wyse man thurgh indiscrecion to falle in mescheffe. Bot if it be lykyng to þe, to knawe our con-
 36 uersacyon, and oure habitacion, we declare it vn-to þe be oure

She describes their land

¹ Three lines with miniature capital F and small f beside in the margin.

² Four lines with ornate capital K and small k in margin beside.

³ Twelve lines space for miniature which is lacking. Written in the margin is 'Regina Talibus cum duabus astantibus'.

and their
manners.
They are in
an island
girdled
round by a
river. The
men dwell
on the
other side
of the river.
How they
breed their
kind.

* Leaf 26
bk.

How they
ride to war.

Their hus-
bands
honour
them at
their re-
turn. They
will fight
Alexander,
who will
get no
honour
through
victory over
women, but
rather if he
be over-
thrown, to
the women
shall it be
great
honour, to
him great
shame.
Alexander
laughs and
sends them
another
letter, tell-
ing them
that he has
conquered
three parts
of the
world and
never been
withstood.

present *lettres*, *pat* oure *habitacion* es in ane *Ile*, *pat* es closede
abowte wit a grete reuer *pat* noþer hase bygynnyng nor
endynnge. Bot on a syde we hase a straye entree. And the
nowmer of women *pat* duellez *per-in* es ccciii^m *pat* ere nozte 4
filed wit men. For oure husbaudez duellez nozte amangez vs
ne no noþer man, Bot on þe toper syde of þe reuer. And ilke
a zere we make a solempne feste in the wirchipe of Iubiter
xxx days. And þan we go till oure husbandes, and duellez 8
wit þan *oper* xxx dayes & hase oure luste and oure disporte
* to-gedir as kynde askes. And if any of vs consayfe & bere
a childe if it be a male þe modere kepis it seuē zere and
than sendez it to þe fadere. And if scho bere a mayden 12
childe þe moder haldez it wit hir & techez it oure maners.
When we goo to werre agayne 3oure enemys we ere c^m rydand
one horse wele armede. And sum of vs hase bowes & arowes,
and sum speres, and *oper* diuerse waypne. And þe remanent 16
kepez oure *Ile*. And when we come wit the victorie oure
husbaudez does vs grete wirchipe. And *pare-fore* if þou come
agaynes vs we late the witt *pat* we will feghte wit the at all
oure myzte. And if it happen *pat* þou hase þe victory of vs, 20
wirchipe saff it nane be to the bi-cause þou hase discomfit
women. And if we discomfit the, it saff be an heghe wirchippe
till vs, *pat* we may discomfit so wirchipfull an emperour; and
to the it saff be a hye reprove. Where-fore we sygnifie vn-to 24
þe by oure *lettres* *pat* þou come nozte agaynes vs for sekerly
pare may grete dysese come *pare-offe*, *pat* *peraenture* þou
knewez nozte now offe at pis tymme.'

When Alexander hadd redd^d pis *lettre*, he began to lawghe. 28
And onane he garte writte anoper *lettre*, and sent it to
Talyfride, whare-offe þe tenour was this.

¹ 'Alexander kyng of kynges and of lordez, the soñ of godd^d
Amon & þe qvene Olympias, to Talyfride quene of Amazon 32
and þe *oper* ladys of þe werlde, *pat* es to say, Asye, Affric, &
Europe we hase conquered and made subiects vn-till vs, & *pare*
was neuer nane of þan *pat* myzte agaynstande oure powere. 36
And if we now suld nozte be of powere, to feghte with 3owe
it ware ane heghe schame till us. Neuer-þe-lesse for als mekiff

¹ Thirteen lines blank space for a miniature.

als we lufe *your conuersacion* we consell pat *ze come*¹ forthe of
your Ile & your husbondez wit *zow*, and appere in oure
 presence. For we swere *zow bi god* *Amon* oure Fader, & by
 4 *all oure goddez* pat *ze sail* hafe na disesse of vs. Bot gyffe² vs
 sumwhat in name of tribute and we schall fynd *zow* and *zoure*
Amazonns pat come * *wit* *zow* horse ynowe. And when *zou*
 listees for to wende hame agayne, *ze schall* hafe gude leue.
 8 And when *pe Amazons* hadd' redd' pis *lettre*, pay went to
 consell, and thoghte it was beste for to ascent vn-till hym.
 And *pañ* pay sent hym x stedes *pe beste* pat myzte be funden
 in any cuntree, and x oper horse *pe beste* pat myzte be geten,
 12 and a grete sum of golde. And *Talifride* hir selfe and oper
 ladys wit hir went un-till hym, and accorded' wit hym, and
 went hame agayne, wonder glade and blythe.

² In *pe mene tyme* it was talde *Alexander*, pat *Porus*, *pe kyng*
 16 of Inde, was in *Bactricen*, and assembled' a grete Oste for to
 feghte eftsonns wit hym. And when *Alexander* herde this, he
 remowede his Oste, and chese owte c.l of duyercs pat knewe *pe*
 cuntree, for to hafe *pe gouernance* of his Oste, and to lede *pañ*
 20 seurlly thurgh pat strange cuntree. In *pe Monethe* of Auguste,
 when *pe son* es maste hate, pay bigañ for to take *paire iournee*.
 And thay went thurgh a dry cuntree, sandye, & wit-owtten
 water. And nedlynge³ *pañ* byhoued' wende armede, *pare* was
 24 so grete plentee of neddirs, and crueft' ³ *wylde bestes*. For
 thies forsaid gydez ware mare fauorable to *Porus*, *pañ* till
Alexander & his Oste, and *pare-fore* pay ledd' *pañ* thurgh
 swilke barrayne and perilous cuntreez. And when *Alexander*
 28 saw it schope thus, and that his consell byfore had sayd *pe sothe*,
 pat es at say, bathe his awnñ frende²z and men of Caspy, pat
 conseld' hym pat he suld nozte hye hym ouerfaste, ne triste to
 mekill to stranzgers; *pan* he commanded' pat all men schulde
 32 wende armed': & so pay did'. And *pañ* all *pe Oste* schane rizte
 as it had' bene sternes, for sum of *paire armours* ware of golde,
 sum of siluer, and sum of precious stanes. And when *Alexander*
 saw *pe araye* of his Oste, and *paire baners* bi-fore *pañ*
 36 Schynande so faire, he was rizte glade. Neuer-*pe-les* grete
 disese he hadd', pat nowper he, ne his men, myzte fynde na water.

He summons them before him and advises them to give tribute.

* Leaf 27.

The Amazons assent to the terms of the letter.

Alexander moves his army against Porus through the desert in the month of August. The desert is waterless and full of snakes and wild beasts, for the guides were favourable to Porus. Alexander then remembers the wise words of his council. They all go armed, so that the whole army gleams like the stars, with banners and a shining mail.

¹ MS. *cone*.

² Six lines with miniature *I*, covering with

its foliage three-quarters of the margin.

³ *wh* turned into *wy*.

A Macedonian knight finds water in a hollow and brings it to Alexander in his helmet. Alexander refuses it lest he alone of all go refreshed. He

*Leaf 27 bk.

casts it down upon the rocks and goes without, so that all his followers are comforted as though they had drunken water.

On the morrow they come to a river with reeds on its banks as high as pine trees. They drink of the water; it slew many of them with a flux. Alexander is greatly distressed, not only for his knights but also for the many beasts of burden that bear their things, and the flocks and herds that go with them.

So it felte þat a knyghte of Macedoyne þat hyzte zephilus fand' water standyng in an holle stane, þat was gadird' þare of þe dewe of þe heuen, the whilke þis forsaiðe knyghte putt in his Bacenett, & broȝthe it tiȝt Alexander for to drynke. And 4 Alexander saide un-tiȝt hym, 'I suppose,' quop he, 'þat I drynke þis water, saȝt þe Macedoynes & þe persyenes be any thyng refreschede þareby, or I saȝt haue aȝt þe refreschyng be my selfe.' And he ansuerd, & saide, 'Þou aȝt ane lorde,' quop he, 'saȝt be 8 comforted þareby.' Quop Alexander þan, 'And * if ȝe¹ saȝt aȝt perische trowes þou þat it solde be lykand' to mee, for to lyfe in sorowe & disese seyng þe dedd' of þe Macedoynes & þe persyenes?' And be-lyue he garte helle down þe water on þe 11 erthe be-for aȝt his men. And when his knyghtis saw that, þay were hugely comfortede þare-by riȝte als Ilkaȝ of þan hadd' dronken a grete draughte of water, and þan went furthe þaire waye. And on þe morne, þay come tiȝt a reuere whase 16 bankes was growand' full of grete redys & þay ware als hye as pyne-treese; ȝa, for þe maste partie of xȝ fote lange. Than badd' [he] that þay drawe of þe water and bryng to þe Oste. Bot aȝt þat dranke þare-offe it keste þan in-tiȝt a flux, and slewe 20 a grete hepe of þam. For þat water was wonder scharpe, and als bittire als any mekiȝt gyrse. Bot þan was Alexander gretly disessed' & aȝt his Oste noȝte allanly of þan-selfe, bot also for þaire horseȝ & þaire besteeȝ þat þay ledd' wiȝt þan þe whilke bi-ȝan 24 for to faile for thyrste. Alexander hadd' wiȝt hym a thowsande Olyphanteȝ þat bare his golde, And foure hundreth cartes of werre and jm & cc wayneȝ. He hadd' also in his Oste ccc^m horse men and muyles & camelles wiȝtownten nowmer, þat bare þaire 28 vetails, and oper thyngȝ þat was necessarye to þe Oste; also oxen and kye, schepe and swyne, wiȝt-owten nowmer, þe whilke perischt for defaute of drynke. Sum of Alexander knyghtes lykked Iren, Sum dranke oyle, & sum ware at so grete meschefe 31 þat þay dranke þaire awen stalynge. And thare was so grete habundance of nedders & oper venymous besteeȝ, þat þam by-houed' nedeȝ trauelle armed, and þat was a grete nuy to þam & an heghe disese. Þan was Alexander wonder² sorye & namely 36 for þe disese þat his Oste suffrede.

¹ On first side of leaf 27 ȝe sall is written, but on the second side ȝe schal.

² MS. undoubtedly reads *wonder*, but one must substitute *wonder*.

¹ And as pay went endlande pis reuere, abowte þe viii houre
of þe day, pay come tilþ a castell þat stode in a littill Ile in þis
forsaid' ryuere; And this castell was made of þe forsaid' redez.
4 Þe brede of this ryuer was foure furlange lenth. And in þat
castell pay sawe a few meñ. And þañ Alexander bad his meñ
spirre þañ þat ware in þe castell in þe langage of Inde whare
pay myghte fynde any swete watir able for to drynke. And
8 also soñ als pay spake to þañ pay with-drewe þañ & hidd.
And Alexander gerte schotte arowes in-to þe castell and þañ
pay hidd' þañ wele þe mare. And when Alexander saw *that
pay walde one na wyse speke wít hym, he hadd' a certene of his
12 knyghtes nakne þam & swyme ouer þe water to þe castell. And
þañ xxxvii balde knyghtis & hardy of Macedoyne nakned' þam,
and tuke ilkañ of þañ a swerde in his hande & went in-to þe
water & swame it to þay were passede þe ferthe parte þare-offe.
16 And sodeynly thare rase oute of þe water a grete multitude
of bestez, þat ere called' ypotaynes, grettere of body thañ añ
olyphant, and deuored' thir knyghtis euer-ilkanne. And þañ
was Alexander rihte sare greuede, and be-lyfe garte take þe
20 forsaid' guydez cl & caste þañ in-to þe water. And onane
þe ypotaynes deuored' þam.

And Alexander thoughte it was nozte spedfull langare to stryffe
wít thase monstres, and garte tromppe vp and remowed' his
24 Oste fra þeine, and went so all þat day wondere wery for thriste.
And also pay hadd' grete disese & nuye of wilde ² Beste þat come
apouñ þañ, þat es to say, of lyones, beres, vnycornes, tygres,
and pardez, wít þe whilke pay faughte & grete traueñ hade.

28 ³ And as pay went ouñ þis wyse wít grete angere & disese
aboute þe elleued' houre pay saw a littill bate in þe riuere made
of rede and meñ rowande þare-in. And Alexander gert spirre
þañ in þe langage of Inde, whare pay myzte fynde any fresche
32 water. And pay talde whare & schewed' þañ a place a littill
þeine whare-in pay saide pay scholde fynde a grete staunke of
swete water and gude. And þañ Alexander & hys Oste went
all aboute þat ryuere, & come tilþ þis forsaid' stanke and lugeð
36 þañ aboute it. And Alexander comanded þat pay sulde sette

In what
fearful
ways his
knights try
to quench
their
thirst.
Going
along the
banks they
come to a
little isle
with a
castle,

* Leaf 28.

wherein are
men who
will give
them no
answer.
Alexander
bids
certain of
his knights
swim the
stream.
They swim
the river,
but are de-
voured by
hippopo-
tami.
Alexander
throws the
guides into
the river
and they
are de-
voured
also.
They travel
onwards
greatly
worried by
wild beasts.
At the
eleventh
hour they
meet a
small boat
whose crew
direct them
to a great
pond of
freshwater.
They camp
round the

¹ Four lines with miniature *A* and small
a written in MS. margin beside.

² of deleted by the scribe before *Beste*.

³ Four lines with red capital *A* and
small a in the MS. margin beside.

pond. Alexander bids that they fell a great wood of huge reeds that grow around it.

When the moon rises a great crowd of scorpions come down to drink.

And there come snakes also and many-hued dragons.

These have crested heads with

* Leaf 28 bk.

golden breasts and open mouths.

Their breath slew any quick thing it smote upon and out of their eyes came fiery flames.

Alexander comforts his frightened

knights. Alexander shows how to fight them with nets, and slays many of them.

How many men of Alexander fell thereby.

The wondrous crabs that then attack them.

Then come white Lions

a wodd' þat growed faste þare-by three myle on lenthe, & allis mekil on brede. þat wodde was all of þe redez þat I spak of bi-fore, and þe stanke was a myle on lenth. þa Alexander comanded þat þay sulde make many fires in þe Oste, and gerte 4 trompe to þe mete. And also þe mone be-gan to schynne þare come a grete multitude of scorpyons to-warde þe stanke for to take þa a drynke. And þa þare come oper manere of nedders, and dragones wonder grete of dyuerse colours. 8 And all þat cuntree resouned of þe noyse & þe hissinge; þat þay made. þir dragones come downe fra þe hye mountaynes for to drynke of þe stanke, and þay hadd' crestis one paire heddez & paire brestez ware bryghte lyk golde, & paire 12 mowthes open. Paire aande slewe any quikk thyng þat it smate upon, and oute of paire eghne þare come flammes of fyre. And when Alexander & his Oste saw þa þay ware riȝt *fered for þa. For þay wende þay schulde hafe weried þa 16 ilka. And þa Alexander comforthed þa and saide vn-to þa: 'Mi wirchipfull knyghtes,' quop he, 'bees noȝte agaste of þa, bot does ilkane as ȝe see me do.' And þa he tuk a nett & sett it bi-twixe hym & þa and tuke his schelde & his spere 20 & faughte wit þa manfully. And when his knyghtes saw þat þay ware gretly comforthed & be-lyfe tuke paire wapynnez & didd' als þay sawe Alexander doo, and slewe of þa a grete multitude, whatt thurgh dyuerse wapynnez, what in paire fyres. 24 And of Alexander knyghtes þe dragones slewe xxi & xxxi fotemen. After þa, þare come owte of þe forsaide wodde of redez, Crabbes of a wonderfull greteness; and paire bakkes ware harder þa cocadrillez. And when þe knyghtis smate þa one 28 þe bakkes wit paire speres, þay myȝte noȝte perche þa, ne na harme do þa. Neuer-þe-lesse þay slewe many of þa in paire Fires and þe remenant of þa gatt in-to þe staunke. And aboute þe sexte houre of þe nyghte þare come upon þa whytt 32 lyones grettere þa Bulles, and þay schoke paire heuedeȝ at þa & grete manace made in paire manere. þa þe knyghtes keped þa in paire nettis and slew þa. After this þare com upon þa þa a grete multitude of swynne þat ware all of a 36 wonderfull mekilness, wit tuskes of a cubett lenthe. And wit þa þare come wilde men & women of þe whilke ilka hadd' sex hende. Bot Alexander & his knyghtes keped þa in paire

- nettis & slewe many of þam. And on þis wyse Alexander & his Oste was gretly diseseð. þam comanded Alexander þat þay schuld make many fyres wit-owtten þe Oste aboute þe stanke.
- 4 After this þare come apoñ þam a wondere grete beste, grettere & strangere þam and Olyphaunt, and he hadde in his frunte three lange hornes. And he was schapen lyke a horse & he was all blakke. And þis beste was called in þe langage of Inde
- 8 'Anddontrucion'. And or he went to þe water at drynke, he assailed þe Oste. Bot Alexander went here & þare amange þe oste & comforthed þam. This ilke beste slewe of his knyghtes xxviiij and bare donne lij and at þe laste it felle in þe nettis and
- 12 was slayne. After þis þare come oute of þe redez a grete multitude of mysz als grete als foxes, and ete up þe dede bodys. Þare was na qwike thyng, þat þay bate þat ne also soñ it dyed. Bot harme did þay nane * to þe oste. þam come þare flyande
- 16 amange þam bakkes, grettere þam wilde dowfes, and þaire tethe ware lyke meñ-tethe. And þay didd meñ mekill disese and hurte many meñ. Of sum þay bate offe þe nese; of sum þe eres. In þe mornenyng arely þare come many fewlis als
- 20 grete as wlturs, reed of colour, and þaire fete & þaire bekes all blakke. Bot þay didd na disese to þe oste, bot went to þe stanke-syde & drewe fisches & elez oute of þe water, & ete þam.
- 24 ¹ þam lefte Alexander þir perilous placez, and come wit his Oste, in-to þe cuntree of Bactriceñ, þe whilke was full of golde & oper reches. And þe meñ of þe cuntree resayfed hym benyngly & wirchipfully and gaffe hym and his Oste grete giftes.
- 28 And þare he habade xxti dayes. In þat cuntree þay sawe trees þat, in-stedde of leues, bare wolfe; þe whilke folkez of þe cuntree guderð & made clathe þare-offe. Þe knyghtes of Alexander wex wonder balde & strange of hert because of
- 32 þe victoryes þay hadd wonneñ of þe wilde bestez before neuenned.
- ² Fra thethyn, Alexander remowed his Oste and come to þe place where Porus lay wit þe folke þat he hadd assembled.
- 36 And one þe morne bathe Alexander and Porus tuke þaire grounde & arayed þaire batells for to feghte. And than

greater than bulls.
Then follow huge swine with great tusks. And with them six-handed men and women. They make great fires around the pond. Then comes a horselike beast greater than an elephant. Alexander again

* Leaf 29. rallies his men. It slays many, but is at last slain. Mice as big as foxes eat up the dead bodies. Whatsoever they hit at once died. Then come bats greater than wild doves. They march into Bactria where they are well received. The wool-bearing trees. The knights take courage because of the strange beasts they

¹ Four lines with red ornate capital þ, but small t scribbled in the margin beside.

² Four lines space with red capital S and small s written in the margin beside.

have conquered.
The armies of Porus and Alexander are arrayed against each other. The Indians fall heavily. Porus challenges Alexander to single combat. The kingship of the nations to abide by the outcome. For Porus being a great man scorned Alexander.

* Leaf 29 bk.

Porus hits Alexander on the head.

Alexander slays Porus by a trick. The Indians fight on for their dead king. Alexander chides them for fighting when their leader is dead.

Alexander bespeaks them peace and surety.

They are right glad and wor-

Alexander lepped apou his horse Buktiphalas and went bifore his Oste & þaṇ þay trumpede up & þe batells joyned sameṇ, & faghte to-gedir riȝte sare. Bot þe Indienes feṭṭ thikfalde in þe batell as corne dose in þe felde be-for þe sythe. 4
 1 And when Porus saw that, he went and stode bi-for all his meṇ, and cryed vn-till Alexander, & saide on this wyse: 'It sittez noȝte till an emperour,' quop he, 'to lose his meṇ þus in vayne. Bot it sittez till hym for to determyne his 8 cause with his awenṇ handez. And parefore late thi folke stand still on þe ta syde, & myṇ on þe toper & late the & me feghte to gedir hand for hand. And if it happenṇ þat þou ouer-come me, my folke & I saṭ be subiectez vn-to þe. And 12 if I ouer come the, thaṇ thou & thi folkez be subiectez vn-to me.' Thir wordez said Porus dispysaṇ Alexander, bi-cause þat he was a maṇ of littill stature. For he was bot three cubites hye, & Porus was fyfe cubetes hye & mare. And pare- 16 fore he traysted hym all in strenghe of his body, noȝte knawande þe vertu & þe hardnes þat was hidd in Alexander.

* And than bathe þe osten stode still ant lete þe twa kynges feghte sameṇ, Porus gaffe Alexander a grete str[a]ke 20 ouṇ þe hede, & was in poynte to hafe felled hym. And then Porus knyghtes sett vp a grete Schowte. And Porus tourned hym to þaṇ-ward for to reprove þaṇ for paire schowtting. And Alexander went till hym manfully & tuke his swerd in 24 bathe his handez & lete flye at hym & hitt hym fullbott one þe heued & slew hym. And when þe Indienes saw that þay bi-gan scharply for to fighte wit Alexander & his oste. Vn-to whayme Alexander spake & sayde: 'Wrechis,' quop he, 28 'wharto feghte ȝe seṇ ȝour kynges es dede. Wate ȝe noȝte wele that thare na gouernour es þe folke are sparpled be-lyse als schepe þat ere wit-owtten ane hirde.' Þe Indienes ansuerd & saide: 'Vs es leuer,' quop þay, 'fighte manfully, and dye in the ȝa 32 felde, þaṇ for to see þe dissolacion of oure folke, and oure lande be destroyed & wasted.' 'Leues ȝour feghtynges,' quop Alexander, ' & wendeȝ hame to ȝour howsez pesaybly & seurely. For I swere ȝow bi oure goddez, if ȝee will do so, ȝe saṭ hafe no harme, ne ȝow ȝour lande saṭ noȝte be destroyed ne spoyled, bicause þat ȝe hafe 36 foghten so manfully for ȝour kynges.' And when þe Indienes

¹ Robert Louson is scribbled here in the right-hand margin.

herde thir wordes pay keste fra þam þaire wapynez & thanked Alexander and wirchiped him riȝte als he hadd bene a godd. Than kyng Alexander lugeð hym þare & his Oste wit hym, & he command to bery þe dede corseȝ þat ware slayne in þe Bateil, and offred sacrafice till his goddeȝ. Also he garte Entere Porus þe kyng of Inde wirchipfully.

¹Fra thethyñ Alexander remowed his Oste & come till a cuntree 8 þat was called Oxidrases. The folkes of þat cuntree are wonder Symple meñ, and noȝte prowde, & pay are called Gymnosophiste. Pay feghte neuer mare ne stryfes. Pay ga alway naked, & citeȝ ne townnez hafe pay nane, Bot duelleȝ in lugeȝ & in 12 caues. When þe kyng of þis folke herd tell of þe commyng of Alexander he wrate a lettre, & sent vn-till hym whare-offe this was the tenour.

²* 'The corruptible Gymnosophist vn-till Alexander a mañ wee 16 wryte. We here tell þat þou commez to werre apoñ vs, whare of we merueylle vs gretly. For wit vs sail þou fynd nathing þat þou may spoyle vs offe. For we hafe na thyng elles amangeȝ vs, bot allanly whare with we may sustene oure wafull 20 bodys. What may þou þañ take fra vs. Bot if þou come for to feght wit vs, feghte oñ. For I late the wele witt, þat oure symplenes will we on na wyse lefe.' When Alexander had redd this lettre he sent ane ansuere agayne oñ this wyse. 'Paisably,' 24 quop he, 'will we com to ȝow and no violence do ȝow.' And þañ he wente in-to þe cuntree whare pay duelled. And he saw þañ ga naked & duelle in luges & in caues, & þaire wyfes & þaire childre away fra þañ, walkand wit wilde bestez. 28 And he hadd grete marueylle, & asked þañ if pay hadd any oper howsez. And pay ansuerde & said, 'Nay. Bot in thir holetteȝ duelle we alwaye & in þir caues.' And Alexander commendid gretely þaire symplenesse, and bad þañ aske hym 32 whate-so þay walde. And pay ansuerd & sayde, 'Gyffe vs,' quop pay, 'vndedlynnesse, so þat we mow noȝte dye; for oper reches couet we nane.' Quop Alexander, 'I am dedely my selfe, how þañ may I giffe ȝou vndedlynnes?' And when pay 36 herd hym say soo þañ pay ansuerd & sayde oñ this wyse. 'A, A, wreched mañ,' quop pay, 'whare to wendeȝ þou pus

ship Alexander as a god.

King Alexander offers sacrifice and buries Porus worshipfully. King Alexander comes to the Gymnosophists, a strange people.

* Leaf 30.

The letter of their king to Alexander, telling him he has naught to win of them.

Alexander commends them and comes peaceably to them. He sees them leading the life of nature.

He admires their ways greatly and offers them a boon. They ask for deathlessness. They chide him for his ambition when they

¹ Five lines with red capital *F* and small *f* written in the margin beside.

² Four lines with red capital *T*.

hear he
also must
die.
He says he
is driven
on to con-
quer by the
might of
God, which
will not
allow him
to rest. He
goes
thence.

He comes
to the
pillars of
Hercules,
which are
statues,

* Leaf 30
bk.

one of gold
and one of
silver.

He finds
them
hollow and
puts money
therein.
He

marches
thence into
a cold and
mirky wil-
derness.

They come
to a great
river, on the
other side
of which
are fair
women
foully clad,
who bear
weapons of
silver since
other metal
have they
none.
There were
no men
amongst
them.

aboutē, & quellez so many meñ, & soo many ilke dediz dooes
sen pou wate wele þat pou sail dye.' 'For sothe,' quop he, 'þe
cause whi I do it es of þe prouydence of godd. For hys
mynystre I am, doand þe commandement of hym. 3ee wate 4
wele þat þe see es nozte trubbled of hym selfe. Bot when þe
wynde entres in-till hym, þañ it stirrez hym & trublez hym.
I walde hafe ristedd and leste all werre. Bot þare es anoper
spyryte & suffres it nozte be in reste.' And when Alexander 8
hadde said thir wordez he leste þañ & went till anoper
cuntree.

¹ Anoper day, he come wit his Oste till a place wharee twa
ymagez ware, þe whilke Ercules gart make & sett in þat place. 12
And þe tane of þañ was of fyne golde and þe toþer of fyne
Siluere, & the lenthe of aythir of þañ was twa cubettis.
When Alexander saw þir ymagez, * he gert perche² þañ for
to witt, wheper þay ware holle or massy. And he fand¹⁶
þat þay were a party hofte. And he garte stoppe þe hole
agayne and putt in þañ a thowsande nobles, & fyve hundreth.
And fra þeine he remowed his Oste, and entrede in-till
a wildirnesse calde & myrk, so þat þay myghte vnnethes añ 20
knaue anoper or see anoper. And fra thythin þay went seuē
daye iournee and entred in-till a wildirnesse, and come till
a grete reuere. And bi-þonde þat riwere þay saw wonder faire
& wele vesaged women cledd in foule clethyng & horrible; and 24
þay hadd in paire handez wapne made all of siluere, bicause
þay hadd noþer Ireñ ne stele. And þay rade one horse. And
men saw þay nane amangez þañ. And when þe Oste walde
hafe passede ouer this ryuere, þay myzte nozte be cause it was 28
rijte brade and full of dragones and oper monstres.

³ Fra thethin þay went aboute towardez þe lefte party of 4
Inde and come till a dry Marras full of gret redez. And as
þay passed thurgh þat Marras, be-lyue þare come owte of þe 32
redez a beste lyke ane ypotayne, whose breste was lyke to þe
cocadrille, and his bakke lyk a sawe, and his tethe wonder
grete, & als scharpe as a suerde; bot in his gangyng he was

¹ Three lines with red capital *A* and small *a* in the margin beside.

² Bottom of leaf 30 right-hand side reads as above *gert perche*; top of leaf 30 turning over to the left-hand side reads *garte*

perche.

³ Four lines with red capital *F* and small *f* written in the margin beside.

⁴ MS. of twice.

als slaw als a snyle. And, in his oute-come, he slew twa knyghtis of Alexander. This ilke beste myzte pay on na wyse perche wit paire speres. Bot wit mellis of yren¹ pay slew it.

They come to a dry morass and meet a terrible beast. They come to the uttermost isles of India. There come a great multitude of elephants against them. But Alexander overcomes them by a trick.

- 4 ¹ And fra þeine pay trauelde thritty day iournez and come to þe vttermaste iles of Inde, & þare pay lugeð þam besidez a ryuere þat es callede in þat langage of Inde Hemmahurer. And aboute þe Eleuend² houre þar come owte of þe wodez a grete multitude of Olyphantez & come apou³ þam wit a gret birre & paire groynes opy⁴. And onane Alexander lepe apou³ his horse Buktiphalas and busked hym agaynes þam and badd þe macedoynes þat pay solde tak paire horse and ilk a man a swyne in
12 a bande, & wende agaynes þe olyphantis. And when þe olyphantes saw þam, pay come gapande wit paire groynez redy te tak þam. And when þe Macedoynes saw þat pay ware fered⁵ and durste nozte go to þam. And Alexander saide vn-to þam,
16 'My wirchipfull knyghtes,' quop he, 'bese of gud comforthe and dredez 3ow na-tyunge. For, and 3e wilt gare 3oure swyne crye faste * 3e schall see all þir Olyphantes flee anon.' And alsone als þe Olyphantes herde þe crye of þe swyne, and þe
20 noyse of paire trompes, pay fledð and durste nozte habyde. And Alexander & his men pursued than, and what wit nettis, whatt wit swerdes & speres, pay slewe of þam a grete multitude, and come agayne to thaire tentis.

He bids his men take swine against

Leaf 31.

them and makes the swine squeal.

- 24 ² Anoper day pay removed þeine, and trauelde thurgh the same wodez of ³ Inde. And pay fande þare women with berdis rechande down to paire pappes, & paire heuede⁴z playne abownne, and pay ware cledð all in skynnes. Pay chasede thir
28 women and sum of þam pay tuke & broghte þam tiif Alexander. And he gart spirre þam in the langage of Inde, how pay liffed in thase woddes, where na duellyng was of men. And pay answered & said, 'We lyffe all,' quop pay, 'wit venyson þat we
32 take in thir woddes thurgh huntynge.'

They march thence through the forests of India and come upon wild women with long beards.

⁴ When pay ware passed oute of thir wodez pay come in-till a faire felde vn-till a place where this forsaid⁵ riuer ran. And þare pay fande bath men & women all naked. And pay ware

And they find also other tribes of wild men

¹ Four lines with red capital *A* and small *a* beside it in margin.

² Four lines with capital *A* in red, and small *a* beside.

³ *pnde* altered into Inde.

⁴ Four lines with red capital *W* and small *w* written in the margin beside.

and
women.

They go
thence fif-
teen days
till they
meet the
Cynocephali
whom they
overcome.

They
march
forty days
to a barren
land with
no hills,
and a
terrible
east
wind blows
over it and
causes fires
and disease
throughout
the camp.
They fear
it is be-
cause of
Alex-

* Leaf 31
bk.

ander's
ambition.
He tells
them it is
because
of the
Equinox.
Then they
go thence
twenty-five
days to a
green
valley
where is
fearful
cold. They
light fires
against the
snow-
storms.
Rain comes
and the
snow stops,
but five

als rughe of hare as pay hade bene bestes. Whase kynde & custom it was als wele to be in þe water, als on þe lande. And als sone als pay saw Alexander Oste onane pay fledd to þe water, and dowked in-till it. Fra þeine pay traueled xv day iournee, 4 and entred in-till woddes þat ware full of cynocephals, þe whilke als son als pay saw Alexander & his oste onane pay assailedde þam. Bot Alexander & his men, what wit arowes whate wit speres & nettes slew a grete multitude of þam, and 8 þe remenaunt of þam fledd here and thare in þe woddez.

¹ Fra thethynd pay went fourty dayes & come in-till a cham-payne cuntree, þat was all Barayne, and na hye place ne na hilles myghte be sene on na syde. And as it ware aboute þe xj 12 houre of þe day, þare bigan so grete a wynde to blawe oute of þe Este þat it blew doun to þe erthe all thaire tentis & paire luges. And þare was grete disese ymang þe oste. For þe wynde tuk fire-brandes oute of fyres þat pay hadd made, and 16 smate dyuerse men & brynte þam. And þan Alexander knyghtes mournurede gretly & said amange þam, 'þe wrethe & þe wreke of oure goddez,' quop þay, 'fallez apoñ vs, Bicause we seke to ferre towarde þe son rysynge.' 'My wirchipfull 20 knyghtez,' quop Alexander, 'bese * of gud comforthe and no thyng ferde for this tempeste es nozte fallen thurgh wrethe of oure goddes bot be-cause of equinox of heruest.' When þe wynde was cessed þay gadirde to-gedir þat þe wynd hadd 24 sparpled.

² Fra þeine pay went xxv days and come in-till a grene valay, and þare pay lugged þam. Than commanded Alexander þat þay schuld make many fyres. For it began for to be vn- 28 sufferable calde. And thare be-gan for to falle grete flawghtis of snawe, as pay had bene grete lokkes of wolfe. When Alexander saw that, he was ferde þat it schuld nozte hafe cessed sone, and bad his men þat þay suld tred doun þe snawe & full 32 it wit paire fete. And paire fyres also helpe þam gretly. Neuer-þe-lesse þare ware fyve hundrethe of þe Oste dedd thurgh þat snawe, þe whilk Alexander gart bery. Þan þare felle a pass-and grete rayne, and þe snaw cessed. Wit þe rayne, also, þare 36 come so thikke a myste, þat continually three days to gedir þay

¹ Four lines with red capital *F* and small *f* in margin beside.

² Four lines with red capital *F* and small *f* in the margin beside.

saw na sonð. And oute of þe clude þat hange abowñ þañ þer
fett as it hadd' bene grete fyrebrandez þe whilk brynt many of
thaire tenttis and of þaire luges. And onane Alexander offred'
4 sacrafice till his goddez and bad his knyghtis put alde ryueñ
clathez wate bi-fore þe fire, and he made his prayere. And also
sonð the whedir wexe clere & faire.

hundred
have died.
Then
comes a
great mist
with the
rain, out of
which fall
firebrands.
Alexander
offers sacri-
fice to
his gods
and the
weather
becomes
clear.
They come
to the
Ganges, on
the other
side of
which are
the Brah-
mans.
They can-
not cross
because of
the danger-
ous beasts.
He sends a
knight
over in a
boat with a

¹ Fra thethin, þay remowed' and come till a grete ryuere þat
8 es called' Ganges & þare þay lugged þañ. And as þay loked
ouer on the toper syde, þay saw twa or thre meñ walke up &
downñ þare. And Alexander badd' his meñ spirre þañ in þe
langage of Inde what þey ware. And þay ansuered' & said.
12 'We are Bragmayns,' quop þay. Alexander hadd' grete desyre
to speke wit þe Bragmayns. Bot he myzte nozte wynñ ouer
þe water; it was so depe & so brade Bot if it had bene in þe
monethe of July and Auguste. And also it was full of ypotaynes
16 & scorpiones and cocadrilles, out takenñ in þe forsaid' monethes.
And when he saw þat he myghte on na wyse wynñ ouer he was
rejte heuy. And belyfe he garte make a lyttill bate of redis, &
couerde it wit nowtte hydys & gerte pykk it wele bathe wit-in &
20 wit-owtteñ. And when þe bate was made, he gert a knyght of
his gang in-to it, and gaffe hym a lettre wit hym for to bere
* to Dindimus, þat was kyng of þe Bragmayns, of whilk lettre þis
was þe tenour.

*Leaf 32.
letter to
Dindimus,
king of the
Brahmans.
Alex-
ander's
letter to
Dindimus,
asking the
Brahmans
the reason
for their
strange
manners,
since he
fain would
learn wis-
dom of
them.

24 ² 'Kyng of kynges and lorde of lordez, Alexander þe sonð of
godd' Amoñ & of þe quene Olympias, vn-to Dindimus kyng
of Bragmayns, ioy. Euer sen we were comen to þat age þat
we couthe discerne by-twix gud & ill we hafe desyred' soueraynly
28 for to hafe wysdomme & konnyng, & for to putt away fra
vs ignorance & vnconnyng. For as þe wise techynge of oure
philosophres declares opynly, Eloquence wit owtteñ witt & wis-
domñ dose ofte-sythes mare skathe þañ gude. Parefore we hafe
32 wele vnderstanden by relacion of dyuerse meñ, þat þour lyfe &
þour maners are diuised and diuerse fra all oþer meñ; so þat
noþer on þe See ne on þe lande 3e seke na helpe and þat 3e
þeme an oþer manere of doctryne þañ we hafe lerende of oure
36 doctours. Whare-fore we pray þow þat 3e wilst certyfyte vs bi
þour lettres of þour lyffe and þour maners and þour doctryne. For

¹ Four lines with capital *F* and small *f*
written in the margin beside.

² Four lines with capital *K* in red,
and small *k* in the margin beside.

Since by
giving an-
other man
goodness
one loses no
goodness
oneself.
He makes a
compari-
son.

Dindimus'
letter to
Alexander.

Wisdom
may be
bought
with no
price.

* Leaf 32
bk.

He com-
mends wis-
dom in
Alexander
as an Em-
peror.
Their ways
are other
than those
of the
Greeks.
The Brah-
mins shall have
no profit
because of
their war-
likeness.

The Brah-
mins lead
a simple
life and
eschew the
worship of
many gods.
They do
not till
nor fish.
They trust

peraventure we may take *pare* of sum gud Ensample, and *your* wysdome & *your* gudnesse neuer be *pe* lesse. For it es na harme tiff a mañ thurgh his gudnes to make anoþer mañ gude as he es. The whilk I may proue bi this simylytude—I supposse a mañ hadd⁴ in his hand a lyght candill, many oþer candills may be lyghted *pare* at, & it lose na-thinge of his lyghte. And riȝte so it es of *pe* gudnesse of a mañ. For many meñ may take gude ensample of hym & his gudnesse be na thyng enmenuste *pareby*. Where-⁸ fore ȝitt eft-sons we pray ȝow þat wit-owtten any taryinge or delay, ȝe schowe vs *pe* maners of *your* lyffynge.¹ Than kyng Dindimus resaffed þis lettre wirchipfully and wrate anoþer agayne of this tenour.

12

¹ ‘Dyndimus maister of *pe* Bragmayns vn-to kyng Alexander ioy & gretynge. We hafe wele vnderstanden by *pe* tenour of thi lettres, þat þou desyres gretly for to hafe verrey connyng and perfitt wysdom; *pe* whilke are mekiff better þañ any¹⁶ kyngdom; for þay may neuer be boghte wit na pryce, wherefore I comeuð *pe* gretly, knawynge þat þou arte a wyse mañ. For ane Emperour wit-owtten * wysdom, es noghte lorde of his subiectis, Bot his sugettis ere lordes of hym. ȝe wrate²⁰ vntill vs, praying vs for to schewe ȝowe oure maners of lyffynge, ilke a poynte efter oþer, *pe* whilke we halde impossible for to doo. For oure maner of lyffynge es full ferre dyuerse fra ȝours. For noþer we wirchipe *pe* goddes þat ȝe wirchipe,²⁴ ne ledis *pe* lyfe þat ȝe lede. And if I writte ȝowe oughte of oure maner of lyffynge, ȝe may hafe na sauoure *pare* in, be-cause ȝe are besily ocupied wit dedis of armes. Neuer-þe-lesse þat ȝe say noȝte þat I layne oure lyfe fra ȝow for envy, Als²⁸ mekiff as comeȝ to my mynde at þis tyme I sañ writt vnto ȝow of oure maners.

² ‘We Bragmayns ledez a symple lyfe & a clene and *pe* wirchipynge of many goddes we eschu. We do na synnes ne³² we wiñ hafe na mare þañ reson of kynde asches. All thynges we suffer & þat, say we, es necessary & ynoghe, þat es noȝte ouermekiff. We tifle na lande, ne eryes, ne sawes, ne ȝokes noþer ox ne horse in plughe ne in carte. Ne nett caste we nane in *pe*³⁶ see, for to take fysche; Ne huntynge ne fewlynge vse we

¹ Four lines with capital *D* in red, and small *d* in margin beside.

² Three lines with red capital *W*, and small *w* in margin.

nanne. Mete & drynke hafe we ynoghe, and oper mete seke we
 nane, bot pat pe erthe oure allere moder wit-owtten mannes
 labour brynges furthe. Wit swilke metis we fitt oure wambes,
 4 whilke nuzes vs nozte, ne na harme dose. And jit of swilke
 metis we fitt nozte oure bodis to full. For amangez vs it es an
 vn-semely thyng & an vn-leefull to see a grete-belyed man.
 And pare-for ere we all oure lyfe tym wit-owtten sekenesse
 8 & lyffez lang & alwaye are in gude hele tiff oure lyffes ende.
 We vse neuer-mare na medcyns ne sekas na helpe for pe hele of
 oure bodys. At a terme of deede endes oure lyfes, for ane of vs
 leues na langere pan an-oper, Bot efter pe order of pe birthe of
 12 man, pe terme of deede comes tiff ilke a man. Thare comez
 nane of vs at na fire for na calde, ne clathez comez pare nane
 apou vs, Bot alway we ga naked. We fulfitt neuer pe desyres
 of oure bodys. Thurgh pacyence we suffree all thynges. All
 16 oure inwarde enemys we slaa, So pat we drede nane enemys
 wit-owtten. For lightlyer es a citee or a casteile taken pat es
 ensegged bathe wit inwarde enemys & wit-owtten, pan pat pat
 es ensegged allanly wit owtwarde enemys. Bot pou, emperour,
 20 feghtes agaynes owtwardez enemys for [to] foster & nuresche thynd
 inwardez enemys, pe whilke ere fendes of heste. We Bragmayns
 has slayne all oure inwardez enemys and parefore we drede nane
 owtwarde enemys ne nane helpe sekas for to hafe agayne pan*
 24 nofer be see ne be land. Bot we ere always sewre ynoghe,
 and lyffez wit-owtten any drede. Oure bodys we hiff wit
 pe leues of trees and pe fruyte of pan we ete. We ete mylke
 also and drynkes water of a gude ryuere or of swete welles.
 28 We wirchippe a godd, and tiff hym alwaye we zelde lonynges.
 We desire pe life of pe werlde pat es to come, and vs liste nozte
 here pe pyng pat turnez to na profett. We spekke nozte
 mekill, Bot when we ere artede for to speke we say nozte bot
 32 pe sothe, and onane we halde vs stift. Rechis lusse we nozte.
 Couetise es a thyng pat may nozte be filled, pe whilke ofte-
 sythez brynges a man tiff a mescheuous ende. Wrethe ne
 envie es pare nane amangez vs, ne nane of vs es strangere pan
 36 anoper. Of the pouert pat we hafe we ere riche, for we hafe it
 in comon. We strife neuer mare, ne beres neuer wapen. We
 bere peesse ilkan tiff oper of custom, nozte thurgh vertu.
 Domes hafe we nane amanges vs, for we do nane itt, wharefore

to mother
 earth.
 They use
 such meats
 as do them
 no harm,
 nor do they
 eat too
 much, and
 there are
 no great-
 bellied men
 amongst
 them. They
 have no
 sickness
 nor medi-
 cines. They
 live the
 fixed term
 of life.
 They have
 no fire for
 cold. They
 conquer
 themselves.
 Alexander
 conquers
 others and
 is con-
 quered by
 his inner
 enemies.
 Therefore
 do the
 Brahmins
 * Leaf 33.
 dread no
 foss. They
 are clad in
 leaves and
 drink
 water.
 They wor-
 ship one
 god and
 desire eter-
 nal life.
 They love
 not long
 speech nor
 covetous-
 ness.
 They are
 all of equal
 might and
 riches, and
 bear no
 weapons.
 Neither
 have they
 dooms, for
 they do no
 ill.

Neither need they mercy. They have no avarice, adultery, or lechery, and have therefore no penance or sudden death.

They are arrayed in no bright clothes.

They always keep to the same trades. They use no baths.

They will make no other man serve them.

They have no houses nor vessels, but live in caves and crags. They sleep on the earth.

* Leaf 33 bk.

Their houses become their graves.

They sail not the seas for trade.

They seek no eloquence but rather simplicity of speech. They have no philosophers, for such are liars and of unsteadfast speech.

But in their schools they learn wisdom and righteousness. They love not plays.

we schulde be called vn-to dome. A law *pare* es *pat* es contrary til oure kynde. For we do na mercy, bi-cause we do no thyng wharefore we sulde aske mercy. We do na labour *pat* *pertenez* to couetise or auarice. We giffe nozte oure bodyse to lechorye, 4 we do nane advowtrye, ne we do na synn wharefore vs sulde nede to do penance. We fynde na fawte in na thyng, For we all does that *pat* righte es. We dye na sodeyne dede, For thurgh soule dedis we corrupte nozte *pe* ayere. We vse na 8 clothes *pat* are littede of dyuerse coloures. Oure wiffes ne are nozte gayly arrayed for to plesse vs. Ne wit *pa*n we comon nozte bi-cause of luste of lecherye, bot bi-cause of childe getyng. Our wyffes sekis na noþer clethyng, *pa*n *pe* forlue of godd 12 hase granted *pa*n. And whaa dare take apoñ hym for to chaunge his wirkyng, an hege syn vs thyne it ware till any mañ for to presume to do it. Baththis vse we nane, ne warme water to wasche oure bodys wit all. *pe* Soñ mynistres vs hete, 16 and *pe* dewe of *pe* ayer ministres vs moyster & wete. We hafe na thoghte of na thyng, ne we schewe na lordechipe abownd oper meñ *pat* ere lyke vn-till us. For a grete crueltee we halde it to constreyne a mañ to serue vs, whayme kynde & 20 *pe* forlue of godd hase made oure broþer als fre als we are. We brynne na stanes for to make lyme off and *pare*-wit to make vs howses at duelle in, and curiouse palases: ne vessell make we nane. In caues or creuyces of craggis we duelle, whare thare 24 comez na noyse of wyndes * ne whare vs thare drede na rayne. On *pe* erthe we slepe wit-owtten any besynesse. Swilk howses we hafe; in *pe* whilke, whils we lyffe, we duelle, and whē we dye, pay ere oure graues. We sayle nozte in 28 *pe* see aboute na merchandyse, in *pe* whilke pay suffre many perils *pat* sayles *parein* & many meruaylles can tell offe. The crafte of Eloquence & faire speche, lere we nozte for to polishe oure wordes; Bot thurgh *pe* sympilnesse *pat* we hafe 32 *pat* suffres vs nozte to lye, all oure speche we speke. Scoles of philosophres haunt wee nozte, whase techechynge es alway discordand & na thyng certayne, ne stabill diffines, bot for *pe* mare partye lyes. Bot *pa* scoles we haunte in *pe* 36 whilke we lere to lyffe vertuosly and also thynges *pat* teches vs for to do no wrange to no mañ. Bot after verray rightwisnesse to helpe ilk mañ at oure powere. Plays lufe we nane.

- Bot if vs liste hafe any disporte we take & rede; þe lyfes
 & þe dedis of oure Auncestres, and oure prediccessours. And
 if we fynde any thyng in þam þat es cause of laughtre
 4 þar-at we wepe & makes dolo. Neuer-þe-lesse we behalde
 oþer thynges of þe whilke oure hertis ere gladdide and grete
 lykyng has, þat es at say, heuen-schyne wit sternes wit-owt
 nowmer; þe soñ faire & bryghte, of whase bryghtnesse all
 8 þe werlde takes lyghte and hete. The see we se alwaye
 of purpoure coloure, and when tempeste; ryse; þare-in it dis-
 truyes nozte þe land þat es nere it, as it does in 3oure
 partes. Bot he embrace; it as his sister and gase aboute it.
 12 And in þe se we see many dyuerse kynde; of Fisches,
 Delphines & porpase; layke þam. We hafe lykyng also for
 to bihalde faire felde; alouer floresched wit flores of þe whilke
 a swete reflaire enters in-till oure nose; in þe whilke
 16 a sensible saule hase maste delite. Also we delit vs in faire
 place; of wodde; & of swete welles whare we here swete
 sange; of fewles. This customs hafe we al-way, þe whilke, &
 þou walde halde nozte bot a while, we trowe þou suld thynke
 20 þam riȝte hard. Blame nozte me, for all þat þou requerede
 me be þi lettres I send þe wretyn. Neuer-þe-less, and it
 sulde nozt displese the, I walde tell þe a littill of oure
 doctryne þe whilke makes oure lyfe to seme harde vn-to þe.
 24 3ee hafe wit-in a schorte while conquered & made sugete
 vn-to 3our empire all Asy, Europe, & Affryke. As 3our selfe
 hase¹ sayde * 3e make þe lighte of þe soñ to faile, when 3e
 seke þe termes of his course thurgh werre. 3e ete all manere
 28 of thynges² þat come; till hande, And 3our vesages seme; as
 3e ware fastande & hungry. 3e slaa 3our childe makande
 sacrafice of þam to Mawmetes. 3e sawe discorde bi-twix
 kynges and thase þat schulde be meke 3e stirre for to be
 32 prowde. 3e make men to thynke þat grete space of landes
 suffice; þam nozte And so pay seke duellynge place; of heuen.
 'Also thurgh 3our goddes 3e do many ill dedis, as pay didd'
 þam selfe, Ensampl of Iubiter 3our godd' & of Proserpyna þat
 36 3e wirchiþe as a goddesse. For Iubiter defouled' many mens

But they rather read of the lives and deeds of their forefathers and weep if there be any cause for laughter. They are glad in the brightness of nature and its delights. He will tell Alexander a little of their doctrine. Alexander has conquered the world, and made the sun pale. The visages of his men grow thin and hungry. They offer their children to Maumets. Alexander sows
 * Leaf 34. discord between kings and ever desires more ground. The gods of the Greeks do ill deeds and they are fools that serve such. The Greeks fain con-

¹ Scribblings at the bottom of leaf 33 bk. :- 'P.', 'G.' below the P., then 'H. Amen. Do For'.

² Scribe originally wrote *thynges*, but changed the *k* into a *g*, thus *thynges*.

quer other
men.

They change
their laws,
and do but
hold with
fine speech,
loving gold
and silver and
rich things.
The Greeks
live in glut-
tony and fall
sick.

The wisdom of
the Brahmins
surpasses all
that of the
Greeks.

They burn the
bodies of the
dead and do
not give back
to earth what
earth has
given forth.

The Brah-
mins slay no
beasts in the
worship of
God, neither
do they have
gold nor
silver nor
precious
things in His
service, since
for none of
these things
does God hear
man, but only
for his good
works.

Prayer is the
word and the
word is God.
Therefore are
the Greeks
fools, holding
themselves

* Leaf 34 bk.
heavenly and
thinking they
communicate
with God
whilst they
defile

wyfes, and Proserpyna made many men to do adwotry wit hir. Full wreched & full hye fules pay ere, pat swilke goddes wirchipes. 3e wiff nozte suffer men lyfe in paire awennd libertee bot makes pain 3our thralles & 3our sugetes. 3e deme 4 nozte rjztwisly, 3e gerre 3our iugez change 3our lawes as 3ow liste. 3e say many thynges pat sulde be donne, bot 3e do pain nozte. 3e halde na man wysse bot hym pat hase Eloquence of speche. 3e hafe all 3our witt in 3our tungez, and all 3our 8 wysdome es in 3our mouthe. 3e lufe golde & siluer & gaders pam to-gedir and desyre3 to hafe grete howsez & hye, and grete multitude of seruande3. 3e ete & drynk to mekilf, so pat oftymes 3our stomake thurgh grete repleccion es greued & many 12 sekenesse pare-thurgh 3e fall in, & so ofte sythes dyes before 3our tyme. 3e wolde euer-mare halde 3our reches and all thynges pat 3e may gete. Bot all thynges at pe laste leues 3ow. pe wysdom allanly of pe Bragmayns passe3 all 3our witt & 16 3our wysdom. For, & we wele consedere, pe same moder pat broghte forthe stanes & trees, of pe same was bathe oure bygynnyng & 3ours. 3e honowre 3our Sepultours curiously wit golde & syluer, and in vesselle made of precyouse stanes 3e putt 20 pe asse of 3our bodys, when pay ere brynned. And what may be werre pain for tilf take pe banes, pat pe erthe sulde hafe, for to ga bryn pain, and nozte suffere pe erthe resayffe his element pe whilke he broghte forthe.

24
'We sla na beste3 in pe wirchipe of goddez. Nee temples make we nane, for to sett in ymage3 of golde or of siluere in pe name of false goddez, as 3e do; ne awters of golde and of precious stanes. 3e hafe swilke a lawe for to honoure 3our 28 goddez wit 3our gudes for pat pay saff here 3our prayers. Bot we vndirstande & wate wele pat noper for golde ne siluer; ne for pe blode of calues nor gayte ne schepe Godd heres any man. Bot for gude werkes pe whilke Godd lufes, and thurgh 32 pe wordes of deuote prayere. Godd wiff here a man for pe worde. For thurgh worde we ere lyke to Godd. For Godd'es worde,* and pat worde made all pe werlde and thurgh pat worde all thynges hase beyng, Moung & lyfe. That worde wirchipe 36 wee and lufes & honowres. Godd'es a spirite. And he lufes na-tyng bot pat that es clene. Wharefore we halde 3ow full grete foles, that wenez 3our kynde be heuenly, and pat 3e hafe

- communicaciō with Godd; And neuer-pe-less files *your* kynde wit advowtries & fornicacions & seruyce of Mawmettis & false goddis, and many *oper* wikkede dedis: ilke a day pis *ze* do.
- 4 Pis *ze* luffe, and *parefore* when *ze* ere dede *ye* salī suffere *tour-*mentis wit-owtten nowmer. *Ze* wene *pat* Godd will be mercyable vn-to *zow* bi-cause *pat* *ze* offere hym blode & flesse of *dyuerse* bestez. Bot we on *pe* contrarye wyse luffez clenness bathe of
- 8 Body & of saule, so *pat* we mowe hafe after pis lyfe ioy *pat* neuer salī hafe ende.
- ‘*Ze* serue nozte a Godd *pat* regnez in heuen, Bot *ze* do seruyce to many false goddis. For als so many membris, als *ze* hafe oñ
- 12 *your* bodys, als many goddis *ze* wirchipe & serues. For *ze* calle a mañ *pe* lesse werlde, and rizte as a mañ here hase many lymmes, so *ze* say *pare* are many goddes in heuen. *Ze* say Iuno es godd of *pe* hert, bi-cause he was wonder angry; and Mars *ze*
- 16 say es godd of *pe* breste, bi-cause he was prynce of Bateffs. Mercury *ze* calle godd of *pe* tung, bi-cause he was wonder euloquent in spekyng. Hercules *ze* trowe be godd of *pe* armes, Bi-cause he did twelfe passande dedes of armes. *Ze* trowe
- 20 Bacus be godd of *pe* throtte, for he fande firste drounkynnesse. Couetise, *ze* say, es godd of *pe* lyuer, for he was *pe* firste lechoure *pat* euer was. And *ze* say *pat* he hase in his hande a byrnannd fyrebrande whare-wit he styrres *pe* luste of lechery. Cereris
- 24 *ze* calle godd of *pe* wambe, bi-cause scho was *pe* firste Fynder of wheete. And Venus, be-cause scho was moder of lechery, *ze* say scho es godd of *pe* preuee membres of mañ & womañ. Mynerua, bi-cause scho was fynder of many werkes, *ze* say
- 28 wisdom ristez in her, and *pare*-fore *ze* call hir godd of *pe* heued. And oñ *pis* wyse all *pe* body of mañ *ze* deuyde in goddes, & na party *pare*offe *ze* lefe in *your* awen powere. Ne *ze* trowe nozte that a godd *pat* es in heuen made *your* bodys of noghte.
- 32 False goddes *ze* wirchipe *pat* salī brynge *zow* to thralledome & schame & schenchipe, and to thaym *ze* make sacrafice & tribute payes. Vn-to Mars *ze* offere a Bare. To Bacus *ze* offere a gayte; To Iune a pacoke; To Iubiter a Bulle; To
- 36 Appollo * a swane¹; To Venus a doufe; To Mynerua ane owle; To Cereris floure; To Mercury hony. And Hercules *ze* onowren wit floures & grene braunches of treessez. *Pe* temple

their own kind with foul sins and idolatry. When they die they shall suffer endless pain and their slain beasts avail them nought.

The Greeks serve not one God but many. They have for every human member a god.

The account of all the Greek gods and their evil doings.

Thus they give all their body over to numberless gods, not worshipping the one Creator, but rather false gods that bring them into thraldom. The sacrifices

¹ Bottom of leaf 34 swanne, top of leaf 35 swane.

which they
offer to
their gods.
The gods
become not
their
helpers but
their tor-
mentors,
egging
them on to
all evils.
Yet they
must
hearken to
them.

Righteous
punish-
ment for
the ill deeds
of the
Greeks.

The prayers
of the
Greeks are
evil, so that
they are
harmed
whether
such be
heard or
not.

All the tor-
ments of
hell are in
the Greeks
through
their own
vices.

And the
bodies of
the Greeks
are a living
hell.

of Couetyse 3e enourne wit rose3. Alle 3our myghte & 3oure
triste 3e putt in pam pat may 3ow na-tyng helpe at nede.
Now sothely 3e pray pañd nozte to be 3our helpers, Bot
3oure tourmentours. For it byhoues nedis be pat, als many 4
goddes als 3e wirchipe & gyffe3 pañd powere of 3our lymmes,
als many tourmente3 3e suffere. Ane of 3our goddes stirres
3ow to fornycacion. Ane oper to ete & drynke to mekill, and
anoper to feghte & stryffe. All ere pay 3our lordes, and to s
pañd 3e obey & serues and wirchippes. So pat wonder it es
pat 3our wrechid bodys fayles nozte for pe many seruyce3 pat
3e do to so many goddes. And gud ri3te it es pat 3e serue
swilke goddes bi-cause of pe many wikkede dedis pat 3e do. 12
And for 3e wilt nozte cesse of 3our ill dedis, parefore 3e serue
swilke goddes til 3our awenñd harme, For euermare pay desyre
pat 3e do ill. If 3our goddes here 3ow when 3e pray to pam,
pay do 3ow harme in 3our conscience. For pat that 3e pray 16
fore es ill. And if pay here 3ow noghte, pañd ere pay contrarye
to 3our desyres. Wharefore whethir pay here 3ow, or pay here
3ow noghte, euer-mare pay do 3ow disesse. Pise ere pa¹
tourmente3 pat oure doctours talde vs offe, pat here in this 20
werlde tourmente3 3ow as 3e ware dede. For, and 3e consyder
wele, pare may no man suffere wers tourment pañd 3e doo.
For all pe takens pat oure doctours telle3 vs ere in helle,
and we see pañd in 3owe.² Pare are many paynes in helle, 24
3e suffre paynes when 3e wake for to do advowtres, forny-
cacions, & thiftes, mañd-slawghters. And namely, pat 3e bee
filled of werldly reches; 3a, & of werldly rechesse. For oure
doctours says, pare es in helle so mekill thriste, pat it may 28
neuer be slokend; and 3e haue so grete Couetyse of worldely
reches pat 3e may neuer be full. Pay say also pat in helle pare
es a hunde pat es callede Cerberus pe whilke hase thre heuedes;
And if 3ee conseder ry3te, 3our wambes are lyke Cerberus. 32
For mekill etyng & drynkkyng, pay say also, pare es³ in
helle a maner of nedder pat es called Idra. And 3e for pe
many vice3, pat 3e hafe bicause of 3our full wambe3 may be
callede Idra. Wharefore & we bi-helde wele all pe illes pat 36

¹ MS. reads *pa*.

² in 3owe inserted in the right-hand margin by the same scribe.

³ MS. twice over, *pare es*.

are in heste, þay dueſte in ȝow. * Waa es ȝow, wreches, þat swilke a mysbileue haldes; whare-fore after þis lyfe, ȝe moñ suffere paynes wit-owtten nowmer.' When Alexander hadd redd þis
4 *lettre*, he was wonder wrathe, be-cause of iniury of his goddeȝ. Neuer-þe-less, be-lyfe he gart write anoper agayne of this tenour.

* Leaf 35 bk. Woe to the Greeks. Alexander is angry at this letter, and replies to Dindimus.

1 'Kyng of kynges, and lorde of lordez, Alexander þe soñ of
8 godd Amoñ and of þe quene Olympias, to Dindimus, kyng of þe Bragmayns, gretying. If all be fun trew amanges ȝow þat þou hase sent wreten in thy *lettres*, þañ allanly ȝe are gude meñ in þis werlde; for as þou says ȝe do nañ ill.
12 Bot wit þou wele² for certayne, þat þis maner of lyffying commeȝ noȝte of vertu bot of custom. All thynges þat we do, ȝe saye es synñ. And all þe crafteȝ, þat ere amanges vs on þe same wyse, ȝe say, þay ere synnes. ȝe wiłl distroye all þe
16 customs þat mañ-kynde hedir-towarde hase hadd & vsed. Owther ȝe schew bi ȝour wordez, þat ȝe are goddeȝ, or ełs tiff goddes ȝe hafe envy. And þare-fore ȝe say, as ȝe say, I may noȝt write to ȝow all þe order of ȝour lyffying. Bot als mekil þare-offe
20 als I may vnderstande at this tyme, I sal writte vn-to ȝow. ȝee say ȝe vse noȝte for to tiff þe erthe, ne sawe na corne, ne plante na vynes, ne sett na trees, na to make na faire howseȝ. And þe cause here-of as it wele semes es for ȝe hafe na Ireñ,
24 whare-of ȝe myghte make ȝow tuyles for to wirke with-aſte. And þare-fore ȝow by-houes nedes ett herbes & lede an harde lyfe, ryȝte as besteȝ. For ȝe may nowþer gette brede ne flesche ne fysche. Does noȝt wolves oñ þe same wyse, þe whilke, when
28 þay may noȝte gete þaire fił of flesche, þay fił þaire belys of þe erthe? And it ware lesuñ or lykande to ȝow to come tiff oure cuntree, we sulde lere na wisdom of ȝoure nede. And þare-fore late ȝour hunger habyde at hame in ȝour awenñ cuntree.
32 Þat mañ es noȝte mekills at commend þat alwayes lyffes in disesse. Bot he es gretly to commend, þat in reches lyffes attemperally. Bot and meñ schulde be commendid þat are oppressed wit disesse, þañ sulde blynd meñ, leprouse meñ,
36 & oper swilke ouer all oper be commendid; þe blynde, for he sees noȝt at desyre; þe pouer, for he hase noȝte at do. And we walde make oure duellynge in ȝour cuntree we sulde suffere

If it be as Dindimus says, then truly the Brahmins only are good. Yet the Brahmins do this through custom, eschewing all civilization, and envy of the gods. Their sparingness and virtues come from their poverty and the poorness of their country. They are even as wolves. If they come to Greece the Greeks should learn naught of them, so let them abide at home. Poverty is not to be praised, but temperance in riches, nor are the maimed to be praised that they

¹ Five lines spaced red capital *K* with small *k* in the margin beside.

² Bot wit þou wele repeated in MS.

do no ill,
since their
defect

* Leaf 36.
hinders
them.
Their chas-
tity is due
to want of
food.
But the
Brahmins
live as mere
beasts.

The Brah-
mins seek
no learn-
ing, having
beastlike
no feeling
or delight
in good.
But men
can rejoice
through
free will.
The
changes of
the world
and of the
ages of
man are
even as the
day
brightens
and
darkens,
even as a
child is
simple,
youth pre-
sumptuous,
and old age
stable.
Who will
look for the
opposite?
The de-
lights of the
senses and
of those
things
given us by
earth, sea,
and sky.
Abstinence
from this is

pouert & wrechidnes riȝte as ȝe do. ȝe say also þat ȝour wyfes vseȝ na prowde aray for to plesse paire husbandeȝ, and þe cause es for þay hafe na noper * thyng for till araye þam wit.¹ Also ȝe say ȝe do nane advowtries ne fornycacions. And þat es na 4 meruaile! For-whi, how sulde þay hafe luste to lechery þat etes noȝte. Luste of lechery es noȝte comonly, bot yf it come of hete of þe leuer or elis of habudance of mete & drynke. Bot ȝe ete na-thynge bot herbes & roteȝ, as ȝe ware swyne, 8 & drynkes water & vnnethes may ȝe slokeȝ ȝour hunger and þarefore ȝe hafe naȝ appetite to womenȝ.

‘ȝe hafe na liste to studie aboute lerynge, ne ȝe seke na mercy ne dees nane till oper. And all this ȝe hafe in comon 12 wit besteȝ. For riȝte as besteȝ hase nowþer resoȝn ne discrecion, ne hase na felynge of gude, riȝte so þay hafe na delite in gode. Bot till vs resonable menȝ þat has free witt of kynde ere many lykynges & blandeschyngeȝ granted. For it es im-possible þat 16 þis werlde wyde & brade sulde noȝte hafe sumȝ chaungynge of gouernance; So þat ne after heuyness & sorowe, Ioy & myrthe sulde noȝte folowe.² For-why manes witt es variable & chaungeable þat chaungeȝ wit þe heuenȝ abowȝnȝ. On þe same wyse 20 manes hert es dyuerse. For whenȝ þe day es clere, manes hert es gladde & blythe. And whenȝ þe day es derke, manes wittis are derke & dulle & heuy. Also menȝ chaungeȝ thurgh dyuerse ages. For barnehedȝ reioyse it in sympilnesse, ȝouthede in 24 presumptuosnes, And grete elde in stabilnes. For wha witt luke efter wysdome in a childe, In a ȝunge maȝn stabilnes, or in an alde maȝn wildenes? Many delitable thynges comeȝ till oure mynde. For sumȝ we See wit oure eghne; Sumȝ we hafe 28 thurgh herynge; Sumȝ we fele thurgh smellyng; Sumȝ thurgh tastynge; and Sumȝ thurgh towchynge. Sumtyme we hafe delite in salutacions & swete sangeȝ & melodys of dyuerse Instrumenteȝ. Of þe erthe we hafe al maner of gud fruyteȝ; 32 of þe see we hafe habundance of fysche, and of þe ayere delyte of fewles of dyuerse kyndis. If þou abstene þe fra all thies owthir it es for pride or for envy. For pride, þat þou dispyseȝ swilke precyouse gifteȝ. For envy bi-cause þay ere noȝte gyffenȝ 36 ȝow, as þat þay ere to vs. Bot efter myȝn opynyȝnȝ I deme þat

¹ Leaf 35 þam wit; leaf 36 þam wit.

² The second vowel in *folowe* is difficult to read. It looks like *solewe*.

your lyffing and your maners commes mare of foundnesse þaṇ
of wysdom. For seṇ ȝe are meṇ ȝe schulde hafe þe vertuȝ of
a resonable creature, and þat hafe ȝe noȝhte.' When Dindimus
4 hadd redd' þis *lettre*, onane he wrate anoþer to kyng Alexander
of þis tenour.

due either to
pride or
peevishness.
He deems the
Brahmins live
so through
folly.

¹ 'Dyndimus, þe mayster of þe Bragmayns, vn-tiff Alexander,
gretynge. We hafe vnderstand þe tenour of þi *lettres* & þus we
8 ansuere. We er noȝte * lordez of this werlde, as we sulde euermare
lyffe þare in. But we ere pilgrymes in þis werlde, and wheṇ
dede commeȝ we wende tiff oþer habytacions. Oure Synnez
greueȝ vs noȝte, ne we duelle noȝte in þe tabernacles of
12 synners.² We do na thyfte. And for þe conscyence þat we
haue, we gaa noȝte furthe in open. We say noȝte þat we ere
goddes, ne nane envy hase vn-to þaṇ. Godd' þat made aṇ þat
es in þis werlde, he ordeyned many diuerse thynges. For
16 warne dyuersitees ware of thynges þe werld myȝte noghte
stande. Godd' gaffe maṇ fre wiṭ, for to discerne of aṇ thynges
þat ere in þe werld, and chese whilke hym lyste. Whare-fore
he þat leues þe iṭ & cheseȝ þe gude, noȝte godd', but goddes
20 frende he may be called. Be-cause þat we lyffe contently,
and in quiete & reste, ȝe say þat we ere goddes, or elles
þat we hafe envy to goddes. But this suspeccion þat ȝe
hafe of vs, perteneȝ to ȝow. For ȝe þat ere blawen full of
24 þe wynde of pride ȝe aray ȝour bodys wiṭ glorious clethyng,
and on ȝour fyngers, ȝe putt iowells of golde & precyous
stones.

Dindimus to
Alexander.

* Leaf 36 bk.

Man is not
lord of this
world, but a
pilgrim in it.
The virtue of
the Brahmins.

God made
things di-
verse so that
the world
might endure.

He gave man
free will to
choose of all
that which
him list. Not
they, but the
Greeks, seem
envious of
the gods.

'Bot I pray ȝow, what profit does þis ȝow: Golde and siluer
28 saues noȝte a manes saule, ne susteneȝ noȝte mens bodys. Bot
we þat knowes þe verray profit of golde, and þe kynd þare-
offe, when vs thristeȝ, & gase to þe ryuere for to take vs a
drynke, if we fynde golde in þe way, we trede apoṇ it wiṭ oure
32 fete. For golde noper filleȝ vs wheṇ we hunger, ne slokens
oure thriste, ne it heleȝ noȝte a maṇ þat es seke. If a maṇ
thriste & drynke water, it putteȝ away his thriste. Also if a
maṇ hunger & ete mete, it does away his hunger. Bot and
36 golde ware of þe same kynde, als soṇ als a maṇ hadd' it, þe vice
of Couetyse suld be slokynde in hym. Be þis cause es golde iṭ.

Gold and
silver save
none. They
despise it as
useless,
quenching
neither
hunger nor
thirst.

Neither does
it slack the
vice of
covetousness.

¹ Two lines with small red capital *D* and small cursive *d* in the margin beside.

² MS. *synners* with a contraction mark over the *y*.

The more one has the more one desires. The Greeks worship wicked men, being themselves wicked, offering up beasts to their idols. Thus do they, who shall die, honour themselves.

For ay þe mare þat a mañ hase þare-offe, þe mare he couetes. Wikkede meñ are wyrchippede amangeȝ ȝow. For comonly a mañ luffes hym þat es lyke tiſt hym ſelſeñ. ȝe ſay þat godd' takes name hede tiſt dedly thynges. And neuer-þe-leſſe ȝe bygge 4 temples, and makes autres in þaṁ, and settis vp mawmettes abowṁ þaṁ, and grete delyte hase when bestes ere offerde, & in þam, and at ȝour name es noysede, þis was done to pi fader, to thyñ Eldfader, & tiſt aſt thi progenytours. And þe 8 ſame alſo es highte on-to þe. Wit ſwilke wirchipes þay ere rewarded, þat knawes noȝte þaṁ ſelſe dedly.' When Alexander hadd' redd' þis *lettre* onane he ſente anoper agayne and that was of this tenour þe whilk þat folowes.¹

* Leaf 37. Alexander to Dindimus. The Brahmins live as they do because they do not mingle with other men, but are shut off from them. They suffer even as those who lie in prison. He holds them as wretched fools, and could he but do it would march towards them with an army to make them leave their miserable life and become warriors.

2 * Alexander, þe ſon of godd' Amoñ & of þe quene Olympias, kyng of kynges & lorde of lordeȝ, vn-to Dyndimus kyng of þe Bragmayns we ſende. For alſ mekiſt alſ ȝour duellynge es in þat partye of þe werlde fra þe begynyng, where na ſtrangers 16 may com to ȝow, bot if it be riȝte fewe, ne ȝe may noȝte paſſe forth of ȝour cuntree, but alſ ſwa ſay ȝe, are parred' in, and na ferrere may paſſe; þarefore ȝe magnyfy ȝour manere of lyffynge and ſuppoſeȝ þat ȝe are blyſſed' be-cause þat ȝe er ſo ſpered' in, 20 þat if ȝe walde neuer ſo gladly paſſe furthe for to lere þe cuſtomes þat oper meñ vſeȝ, ȝe may noȝte; and nyſt-ȝe wiſt-ȝe, ȝow by-houeȝ nedis ſuffere þat cayteſtee þat ȝe lyffe in. Wherefore it ſemeȝ bi ȝour techynge, that þay þat liggeȝ in preſonñ, 24 are alſ mekiſt at comend' alſ ȝe, þe whilke vn-to paire lyues ende ſuffres ſorowe and nede. And as me thynke, þe gudneſſe þat ȝe ruſe ȝow offe, may wele be lykkened' to þe paynes of þaim þat ere in preſonñ. And ſo þat that oure lawe demes to be done t[i]ll wikked' 28 meñ, ȝe ſuffere kyndely. And þarefore hym þat we halde wyſe, ȝe halde an Ebbere fule². Sothely me thynk ȝour lyffynge es noȝte blyſſed' bot wrechid' and as it ware a chaſtyng to ȝowe. I ſwere ȝow by oure goddeȝ of myghte, þat, & I myghte come 32 to ȝow with an oſte, I ſulde gare ȝow leue ȝour wrechid' lyfe, and by-come meñ of armes, alſ many of ȝow alſ ware able.' When Alexander had' ſent this *lettre* tiſt Dyndimus he gart

¹ The ſecond vowel of *folowes* is often written ſo ſmall as to render it uncertain whether it is an *o* or *e*.

² Four lines with red capital *A*.

³ *fou* written in MS. before *fule* and ſcratched out. This word *ſon* or *fou* was complete and not a half-written word, as the MS. ſhows.

rayse vp a pelare of Marble a wonder grete, & an heghe, and gart writt *pare*-apon this title wit lettres of grewe, of latyne, and of pe langage of Inde. 'I Alexander, Philip^p son of
4 Macedoyne, after pe discomfytour & pe dedd of Darius & Porus come on werre vn-to this place.'

¹ Fra peine kyng Alexander & his Oste remowed & come in-
tiff a felde, pat was called Actea & *pare* pay luge^d. Abowte
8 pat felde was a thikke wodd of treesse berand fruyte; of pe
whilke wilde men pat duelt in pe Same wodd vsede for tiff hafe
paire fude, whase bodyes ware grete as geauntez, and paire
clethyng ware made of skynnes of dyuerse bestez. And when
12 pay saw Alexander Oste luge *pare*, onane *pare* come oute of pe
wodd; a grete multitude of *pañ* wit lange rodde in paire handz &
bi-gaⁿ for to feghte wit pe oste. And pan Alexander commanded
pat all [pe] oste schulde sette vp a schowte at anes. And also
16 sone als pe wylde* men herde pat² noyse, pay were wondere fered
be-cause pay had neuer be-fore herde swilke a noyse. And than
pay be-gaⁿ to flee hedir & thedir in pe wodd. And Alexander &
his men persued *pañ* and slewe of *pañ* vi^c xxx iiij. And pay slew
20 of Alexander knyghtes xxvij. In pat felde Alexander & his
oste leuged³ iij dayes and vetailed³ *pañ* of pat fruyte pat growed
in pe wodd.

³ Fra peine pay remowed and come tiff a grete ryuer, & luge^d
24 *pañ* *pare*. And as it ware abowte none, *pare* come apoñ *pañ*
a wilde man, als mekiff als a geaunte. And he was rughe of
hare all ouer, and his hede was lyke tiff a swyne, And his voyce
also. And when Alexander saw hym, he bad his knyghtis tak
28 hym & bryng hym bi-for hym. And when pay come abowte
hym, he was na thyng fered, ne fledd nozte, bot stodd baldly bi-
fore *pañ*. And when Alexander saw that, he comanded pat pay
sulde take a zonge damesell & nakkeñ hir & sett hir bi-for hym.
32 And pay did soo. And onane, he ranne apoñ hir romyand³ as
he hadd bene wodd. Bot pe knyghtes wit grete deficculteeste
hyr fra hym. And ay he romyed & made grete mane. And
este pay broghte hym tiff Alexander and sett hym bi-for hym.
36 And Alexander wonderd gretly of his figure. And *pañ* he

Alexander raised up a pillar and wrote his victories on it in Greek, Latin, and in the language of India. They come to a forest full of wild men eating fruit and clothed in the skins of beasts. They fight Alexander with rods in their hands.

* Leaf 37 bk.

The Greeks put them to flight by shouting, and slay many of them.

They come to a great river and stay there. There they meet a wondrous wild man with a swine's head and voice.

They tempt him with a naked damsel and

¹ Four lines with red capital F.

² *pat* at the bottom of leaf 37 and *pe* at the top of leaf 37 bk.

³ Five lines with large red F, small f beside.

then burn him alive. They come to a wondrous wood-land with trees that spring up in the day-time and at sunset sink back into the earth, with fruit of sweet smell but of bitter taste.

A knight takes of this, but is smitten dead by an evil spirit, and a voice proclaims the same to any that come nigh. In that

* Leaf 38. place are tame birds, and who touches them is scorched by fire. They come to a mountain, climb for 8 days, and at the top they fight dragons, etc. Going down they come into a dark valley with wondrous trees and streams, and a mountain with thick air.

gerte bynd hym tilf a tree & make a fyre abowte hym & brynne hym. And so pay didd. ¹Fra peine pay remowed & come tilf anoper felde in þe whilke *pare* ware growand treesse, of a wonderfull heghte, and pay bigaṇ for to sprynge vp at þe soṇ rysynge ; 4 And bi þe soṇ settinge pay wyted a-way in-to þe erthe agayne. At þe firste houre of þe day pay bi-gaṇ to sprynge oute of þe erthe, & so pay wex ay to myddaye, and paṇ pay bi-gaṇ to decrese. And by þe soṇ settinge pay ware in þe erthe agayne, 8 And was na thyng of paṇ sene bi-fore oṇ þe morne. Þir treesse bare a fruyte wonder swete of reffayre bot pay [ware] bitter of taste. When Alexander saw þat fruyte he bade a knyghte bryng hym *pareoffe*. And he went & tuk *pare-offe*, and onane 12 a wikked spirit smate hym, and be-lyfe he was dede. And paṇ pay herd a voyce in þe ayer þat said on þis wyse: 'What maṇ so neghes þir treesse he saff dye onane.' *Pare* was also in þat felde fewles wonder meke & tame. Bot what maṇ so layde 16 hande on any of þam, onane *pare* come fire oute of paṇ, & brynt hym riȝte greuouly.

* ² Than pay remowed fra peine, And come tilf a Mountayne, þat was so hye, þat pay ware viij dayes in gangyng ar pay 20 myȝte wyne to þe heghte *pare-offe*. And when pay come to þe heghte of it, *pare* come agaynes paṇ a grete multitude of dragones, Serpentes, and lyones þe whilke turmentid Alexander & his meṇ reghte gretely. And at þe laste, pay askaped paire 24 daungere, and went doune of þe mountayne and come in-tilf a vaylay þat was so myrke þat vnnethes myghte ane of paṇ See anoper. In þat depe valay ware treesse growand of whilke þe fruyte & þe lefes ware wonder sauory in þe tastyng, and reueffis 28 of water faire & clere. Aghte dayes contennely pay saw na soṇ. And at þe viij days end pay come to þe fote of a mountayne where all þe Oste thurgh a wikked thikk ayer ware so gretley disessed þat pay ware in poynte to hafe bene choked 32 *pare-offe*. And when pay come a-bownd on þe mountayne, pay fande þe ayer mare soteli, and þe lighte of þe day mare clere. And þus pay ware wendand vpwarde, oṇ þis Mountayne Elleuen, xj, days wit grete trauaile. And when pay come to þe 36

¹ Four lines with red capital *F* and small *f* beside.

² Four lines with red capital *T* and

a dragon within, and the head of a dragon above with sting out.

hegheste of pis Mountayne, pay saw on þe toper syde faire weder
 & bryghte. And þaṇ pay went down of pis Mountayne, and
 come in till a grete playne of whilke þe erthe was wonder rede.
 4 And in pis playne þare were growande treesse wit-owtten
 nowmer; and pay passed noȝte a cubit in heghte, & þaire fruyte
 & þaire lefes were passandy swete as pay had bene fyges. And
 pay fande þare reueſs riȝte many, of clere water as cristalle.
 8 And it was als nureschand to manes body, as it hadd bene
 mylke wit-outen eny oper mete. Thurgh þat ilk playne pay
 went fourty .xl. days and þaṇ pay com till wonder heghe
 Mountaynes; and it semed as þe toppes had towched þe firma-
 12 ment. And þir Mountaynes ware als brant vp-riȝte as pay had
 bene walles. So þat þare was na clymyng vpon þam. And at
 þe laste pay fande twa passageȝ be-twix þase Mountaynes, of
 whilke, þe tane streched to-warde þe west, and þe toper towarde
 16 þe Este. Than Alexander demed þat that dyuyson be-twix þase
 Mountaynes was made thurgh Noye flode. And þaṇ pay went
 by þat passage þat streched to warde þe Este Seuen days.
 And on þe heghten .viii. day pay fande a Basilisc þat men
 20 calleȝ a Cocatrys, a grete & ane horrible. And bicause of his
 grete elde he was foull stynkand. * Pis ilke Basilisc was so
 venymous, þat noȝte all anely thurgh his stynke, bot also
 thurgh his sighte allane, whayn so he loked on, he sulde dy
 24 onane; þaṇ þe Macedoynes and þe persyenes, as pay passede
 thurgh þe strait way dyed thikk-falde thurgh þe sighte of þat¹
 Basilisc. And when Alexander knyghtis saw that perill, pay
 durste passe na forther bot said amangeȝ þaṇ: 'Þe vertue of
 28 oure goddes,' quoth pay, 'es bifore vs, þat schewes vs þat we
 schulde ga na forthir.' Bot Alexander went bi hym ane vpon
 an heghe cragge, where he myghte see on ferrome fra hym.
 And þaṇ he saw this pestellencius beste þe Basilisc lygg
 32 slepande in myddes of þe passage. Þe kynde of hym was þat,
 als so sone als he felid a maṇ or a beste com nere hym,
 for to open his eghne & stare appon þaṇ, and als many
 als he loked on, solde sudaynly faſte doun & dye. When
 36 Alexander had sene hym, Be lyfe he went dounne of þe²
 cragge, and gart sett a merke þat na maṇ sulde passe. And

They climb
 this mountain
 for eleven days
 and then they
 come through
 clear weather
 into a land of
 red earth grow-
 ing dwarf trees
 with wonder-
 fully sweet
 fruit. And
 here they
 find crystal
 streams whose
 waters nourish
 as though they
 were milk.
 They march
 through that
 plain forty
 days, and then
 they come to
 mountains
 whose tops
 reach the skies
 and in which
 were two
 passages, one
 towards the
 west and the
 other towards
 * Leaf 38 bk.
 the east, which
 Alexander
 thinks were
 made by the
 Flood. They go
 east seven
 days.
 On the
 eighth day
 they find a
 Basilisk that
 slays through
 look alone.
 He kills many.
 Alexander sur-
 veys him from
 afar off.

¹ þat inserted above the line by scribe.

² g first turned into c, then finally erased between þe and cragge.

Alexander approaches him shielded by a mirror, so that the Basilisk slays himself with his own glances.

The Basilisk being slain they burn him, and praise Alexander.

At last they found their way barred, and must come back to the plain. Then they went westward fifteen days and then to the left. They come to a mountain of adamant hung

* Leaf 39.

around with chains of gold and with sapphire steps.

Alexander goes up the mountain with twelve princes, and finds a wondrous palace of precious

það he gart a pavyssse be made seuēd cubites of lenghte & foure oñ brede; and oñ þe vtter syde þare-offe he gart sett a grete Mirroure, And a large. And at þe nethir ende of þe pavisse he gart nayle a burde þe lenthe of a cubit for to couere 4 wit his legges, and his fete, so þat na party of hym myzte be sene. And þan Alexander tuk þis pavisse in his handis, and went towarde this Basilisc, and warned his meñ þat nañ of þam sulde passe his termes. And when he come nere þe 8 basilisc, þe basilisc opynde his eghne. And wit a grete ire he bi-helde þe Mirroure and saw hym-selfe þare-in. And of þe reflexcion of þe bemes of his sighte strykande appoñ hym-selfe Sudanly he was dede. And when Alexander knewe wele þat 12 he was dede, he called tiff his knyghtis; And bad þam come see hym þat slewe þaire felawes. And when þay come tiff hym, þay saw þe Basilisc dede. And þan þay comended & prayssed gretly his hardynesse and his hye witt, And went & 16 bryned þe Basilisc at þe commandement of Alexander.

¹ Fra þeine þay went tiff þey come to þe ferreste of þat weye; and ferrere myzte þay nozte wynñ. For þare ware so hye Mountaynes agaynes þam and craggess like walles þat þay 20 myzte passe no forþer. And þan þay turned agayne, and come to þe forsaide playne; and went by þat way þat streched towarde þe weste fyvftene .xv. days. And þan þay lefte þat way, And turnede oñ þe lefte hande. And so þay went foure score 24 ^{xx} iiij days, and at þe laste þay come tiff a Mountayne of adamande; and at þe fute þare-offe þare hange chynes of golde. Þis Mountayne hadd made * of saphyres twa thowsande 28 greez & a halfe, by þe whilke meñ ascendid to þe summit of þe Mountayne. And þare Alexander & his Oste luced þam.

² And on þe morne Alexander Offerd sacrafice tiff his goddes, And þan he tuk with hym xij twelue prynces of þe wyrchip- 32 fulleste þat he hade, and went vp bi þe forsaid greez till he come about oñ þe Mountayne. And þare he fand a palace wonder faire and curiously wroghte; and it hade twelve zates and thre score & teñ wyndows. And þe lyntafts bathe of þe 36 durs and of þe wyndows ware of fyn golde, wele burnescht, and þat Palace was called þe howse of þe soñ. Þare was also

¹ Four lines with red capital *F* and small *f* beside.

² Four lines with red capital *A*.

- a temple all of golde & of precious stanes, And bi-fore þe metal and stones.
dorez þare-offe þare was a vyne of golde, berande grapes of
charbuncles, of Rubyes, Dyamandez, and many oþer maneres of
4 precyous stanes. Það kyng Alexander & his princez went in-to He goes
þe palace; and fande þare a mañ liggand in a bedd of golde, and into the
couerd wit a riche clathe of golde. And he was riȝte a mekiñ palace.
mañ and a faire, And his berde & his heued ware als whitt He finds an
8 als any wolfe; and hym semed lyke a Bischope. Als soñ als aged man
Alexander & his prynces saw þis alde mañ þay knelid downne there of
on þaire kneesse and saluste hym. And he ansuerd & saide: Bishop-like
'Welcom Alexander,' quop he, 'I tesse the þou sail see, þat neuer appear-
12 fleschly mañ bi-fore this tyme sawe; And þou sail here þat neuer ance.
erthly mañ herde are.' And Alexander ansuerd & sayd: 'Maste He kneels
blyssed alde mañ,' quoth he, 'how hase þou knawying of me?' and salutes
'For sothe,' quoth he, 'bi-fore Noy flode couerde all þe erthe, him.
16 knewe I bathe the, & thi dedis. I wate wele þou desyres for The aged
to See þe haly treez of þe Soñ And þe Mone þe wilke tellez man speaks
thynges þat ere to come.' 'Ȝaa for sothe,' quop Alexander, and tells
'þer es na-tynges þat I desyre mare, það for to see það.' him he
20 And he was riȝt gladd. Það saide þe alde mañ till hym: shall see
'And ȝe be clene of fleschly dede wit women, það es it leefull and hear
to ȝow to see það and to entir in-to þat haly place þat es what never
a sette of godd. And if ȝe be noȝte clene, it es noȝte leefull earthly
24 to ȝow.' 'Ȝis, sir, sothely,' quop Alexander, 'we ere clene.' man did
það raise þe alde mañ vp of þe bedd þat he lay in, and before. He
said vn-to það: 'Puttez offe ȝour rynges,' quop he, 'and ȝoure shall have
clathes, & ȝour schone, and folowes me.' And þay dyd¹ so. his desire
28 And það Alexander tuk wit hym tholomeus and Antiochus, and know
& folowed þe alde mañ, and went thurgh þe wodd þat the future.
was about on þe Mountayne closed with mannes handez. He can only
þe * treesse of þat wodd ware an hundreth .c. fote lange & see the holy
32 hie, and þay ware lyke lorers or Olyue treesse; And out trees of the
of það þare rañ rykyles & fynne bawme. And as þay went sun and the
thurgh þat wodd þay saw a tree wondere hie, in þe wilke moon if
þare satt a mekiñ fewle. Þat tree hadd noþer þare-on lefes if
36 fruyte. Þe fewle þat satt þare-on hadd on his hedd a creste clean of
lyk till a pacokke, & his beeke also crested. Abowte his nekke, fleschly
he hadd fethirs lyke golde. Þe hynder of hym was lyk purpure; deeds.
He must
put off
every-
thing to see
them.

Alexander,
Ptolemy,
and Anti-
ochus fol-
low the

* Leaf 39
bk.

old man
through the
wood on the
mountain,
through
wondrous
trees that
shed in-
cense and
balm.

¹ The scribe first wrote *de* and then changed the *e* into a *y*, making it into *dyd*.

They
see the
Phoenix.
They come
to the holy
trees of the
sun and
the moon.
The old
man tells
him to look
up and
think and
the Spirit
of the Trees
shall an-
swer his
thought.
These trees
were high.
The leaves
of the sun
tree golden
red, of the
moon tree
shining
white.
Alexander
would sac-
rifice to
these trees
but may
not. The
sun tree
speaks in
Indian or
Greek, the
moon tree
begins in
Greek and
ends in the
language of
India. He
gets his
answer. He
shall win
the world
but never
see home
again.

* Leaf 40.

Twenty
months

and þe tayle was ownnded^r ouerthwert, wit a colour reede as
rose & wit blewe. And his fethers ware rizte faire schynand.
Wheñ Alexander saw þis fewle he was gretely meruailled^r of
þe faired^r of hym; þañ saide þe Alde mañ: 'Alexander,' quop 4
he, 'þis ilke fewle þat þou here seese es a fenix.' And þañ
pay went forþer thurgh þe forsaid^r wodd; And come to thiese
haly treez of þe soñ & þe mone þat growed in myddez of þe
wodde. And þañ þe alde mañ saide tiñ Alexander: 'Luke vp,' 8
quop he, 'to zone haly treez, and thynke in thi hert what
preuatee so þe liste, and þou sañ hæfe a trewe ansuere. Bot
luke þat þou speke na worde in opyñ. And þare-by sañ þou
witt þat it es a gude spiritt, þat knawes thi thoghte.' Thir 11
twa treez were wonder hye. And þe tree of þe Soñ had leues
lyk fyne golde, reed & faire schynande. And þe tree of þe
mone had lefes whitt als syluer & faire schynande. And
þañ walde Alexander hæfe Offrede Sacrafyce to þir treez. Bot 16
þe alde mañ walde nozte suffre hym, bot said: 'It es nozte
leuefult,' quop he, 'in þis haly place, nowþer to offre encense,
ne to slaa na bestez, Bot to knele douñ to þe boles of þir treez
& kysse þañ & pray þe soñ & þe mone to giffe trew answers.' 20
And þañ Alexander spirred^r þe alde mañ, in what langage þe
treez sulde giffe þaire answers. And þe alde mañ ansuerd^r &
said: 'The tree of þe Son,' quop he, 'answers owþer all in þe
langage of Inde or ellis of grewe. And þe tree of þe Mone 24
begynnez wit þe langage of grewe & endeþ wit þe langage of Inde.'
And as þay stode þus spekande, Sudaynly þare come
a bryghte beme fra þe weste þat schane ouer all þe wodde.
And þañ Alexander kneled^r douñ, and kyssede þe treez an 28
thoght þus in his hert: 'Sañ I conquere all þe werlde, and
afterwardeþ wit þe victorye wende hame to Macedoyne tiñ my
moder Olympias, and my sisters? And * þañ þe tree of þe soñ
ansuerd^r softly in þe langage of Inde, And said þir verseþ: 32

'Tú dominātorum orbis dominus simul et pater extas,
Set patrum rignum¹ per tempora nulla videbis;'

pat es at say, 'þou ert bathe lorde & fader of alle þe werlde,
Bot þe Rewme of thy Fadyrs sañ þou neuer see wit thyñ eghne.' 36
þañ bygañ Alexander to thynke how lange he sulde lyffe,

¹ Sic in MS.

and whate dedd^r he sulde dye. And þe tree of þe Mone
ansuerd^r by þir twa verseȝ :

shall he
live and his
friend shall
poison him.

‘Anno completo viues & mensibus octo,
De quo confidis tibi mortis pocula dabit.’

4

þat es at saye, ‘A twluemonthē & aughte monethes sañ þou lyffe.
And þañ he þat þou traisteȝ oñ, sañ giffe þee a drynke of dedd^r.’
þañ bi-gañ *Alexander* to thynke in his hert oñ þis wyse,

8

‘Tell me nòw, hály trèe,
Wha he ès þat sall sláa mée.’

And þañ þe tree of þe soñ ansuerd^r by þir twa verseȝ :

‘Si tibi pandatur vir qui tua facta resoluet,
Illum confringēs & sic mea carmina fallent.’

12

þat es at say : ‘And I schew the þe manes name, þat sañ vñdo
thi dedis, þou wilt slaa hym, and so sañ my prophycye fayle.’

Did he
but know
the man's
name, he
would try
to undo the
prophecies.
The old
man bids
him not
incommode
the trees.

And þañ þe forsaide ald mañ sayd^r tiff *Alexander* : ‘Disese
16 na mare þir trees,’ quop he, ‘wit thyne askynges. Bot tourne
we agayne, as we come hedir.’ And þañ *Alexander* & his twa
prynceȝ wit hym tourned^r agayne wit þe alde mañ. And ay as
he went, he weped^r bitterly, bi-cause of his schorte tyme ; and

20 his prynceȝ also weped^r riȝte sare. Bot he commanded^r þañ þat
þat pay schulde noȝte tesse to na mañ of his Oste þat that pay hadd^r
herde & sene. And when þay ware comen to þe forsaide Palace
þe alde [man] said^r vn-tiff *Alexander* : ‘Torne bakke agayne,’

He goes
away weep-
ing.
He com-
mands his
friends to
tell no
man.
The old
man bids
him turn
back and
travel to
the west.

24 quoth he, ‘for it es noȝte leefull to na mañ to passe forthire.
If þe liste wende toward^r þe weste, þou sañ noȝte traueise full
lange are þou come to þe place, whare þe liste to bee.’ And
when þe alde mañ had said^r þir wordeȝ, he went in-to þe palace
28 and *Alexander* and his twa prynceȝ went douñ by þe forsaide
greeȝ & come to þe Oste.

¹ Apon þe morne *Alexander* & his Oste remowed^r þeine & went
agayneward^r fyftene days, And come agayne to þe forsaide
32 playne & þare pay lged þañ. And þare at þe entree of þa-
twa forsaide ways, *Alexander* gart rayse vp twa pelers of Marble,
and by-twixe þañ he haude a table of golde, on þe whilke was
wretyn in þe langage of grewe, hebrew, of latyne, and of Inde,
36 one this wyse : ‘I, *Alexander*, Phillip^p soñ of Macedoyne,

Alexander
journeys
fifteen
days and
then raises
up two
marble
pillars,
between
them a
table of

¹ Four lines with red capital A.

gold with
letters in
Greek,

* Leaf 40
bk.

Hebrew,
Latin, and
Indian,
telling of
his great
deeds and
guiding
after-
comers.

Thence
they go
westwards
towards
Macedonia
and come
to the
country of
Prasiac.

The men
of the
country
bring him
presents.
There is
in that
country a
city of

precious
stones
ruled over
by a widow
queen and
her sons.
Alexander
writes to
Queen

Candace
sending
presents,
asking her
to come
that they
may offer
sacrifice
together.

Queen
Candace
writes to
Alexander
on his con-
quests, but
proclaims
that they
may not

sett thir pelers here, after þe dedd' of Darius kyng of Perse
and of Porus kynge of Inde. What man so wil passe forþer
late hynd * tourne one þe lefte hand. For wha so tourne3 one
þe ri3te hande he sall fynde many obstacle3 & greuance3 pat 4
sall peraenture lett his agayne-commynge.'

¹ Fra þeine pay remowed thurgh þat playne and lefte pase
strayte wayes, takand þe way westeward þe gayneste towarde
Macedoyne. And at þe laste pay come till a cuntree þat highte 8
Prasiac, And þare pay lugged þam. And when men of þat
cuntree herd of þe commynge of Alexander, wit grete wirchipe
pay broghte hym grete presante3 of swilk thynges as pay hadd'
in þaire lande, pat es at say, skynnes of fische3 lyke vn-to þe 12
skynnes of pardes, or of lyouns also, and lawmpray skynnes of
sex cubites lange. In þat cuntree was a noble citee all of
precyous stanes made wit-owtten tyme or sande, sett apoun an
hiff. Of þe whilke citee, a wirchipsull lady and a faire hadd' 16
þe lordechipe. Þis lady was wedowe and scho hadd' three
sones. The firste of þam highte Candeolus, þe secand Mar-
cipius, And þe thirde hight Carator. To þis lady Alexander
sent a lettre of þis tenour:

² 'Alexander þe son of godd' Amou & of þe quene Olympias,
kyng of kynges & lorde of lordes vn-to quene Candace of Mero
ioy & gretynge. We sende 3ow ane ymage of godd' Amou all
of fyne golde; And þarefore come3 till vs þat we may wende 24
togeder to þe Mountayne for to make sacrafyce þare to godd'
Amon.' When þe Qwene Candace hadd' redd' þis lettre, Scho
sent hir embassatours till kyng Alexander wit grete presante3
and with a lettre of this tenour:

³ 'Candace, quene of Mero, vn-till Alexander, kyng of
kynges, ioy. Wele we knawe þat 3e hafe by reuelacion of
godd' Amou þat 3e schulde conquere Perse, Inde and Egipte,
and subiecte vn-to 3ow all oper nacions. And all þat 3e hafe 32
done, no3te allanly was graunted bot also of all oper godde3.
Till vs þat hase faire saules & bryghte it nede3 noghte to make
sacrafyce to godd' Amou in þe Mountaynes. Neuer-þe-lesse
bicause we wil no3te offende 3owere maiestatee, we sende till 36

¹ Four lines with red capital *F* and small
f in margin beside.

² Four lines with red capital *A* and

a beside.

³ Four lines with red capital *C* and *c* in
the margin.

Amoñ þoure godd' a Coroñ of golde and precyouse stanes, And
teñ chynes¹ of golde sett full of precious stanes. And vn-to
þow we sende a hundrethe Besauntez of golde; And twa
4 hundreth papeiayes closed in cagez * of golde, c childer of
Ethipes, cc apes, cccc Olyphantis, xxxiii¹¹ vnycornes, iij panter
skynnez, of pardez & lyounes cccc, and we beseke þowre hie
maieste þat 3e wilt notyfye vn-till vs bi þour wirchipfull lettres,
8 wheder 3e haue conquered alle þe werlde and made it subiecte
vn-to þow or nozte.' Amangeþ her embassatours þat scho sent
till Alexander þare was a wonder crafty & a suteñ payntoure.
And hym scho charged þat he schulde besely by-halde Alexander
12 & purtray his fygure in a parchemyñ skynñ and brynge it to hir.
And so he did. Alexander ressayued þe forsaïd gyftes reuerently
and sent hir noble gyftes agayne wit hir embassatours. And
whē pay come hame þe payntour take hir þe segure of Alexander
16 purtrayed as I saide be-fore. And whē þe quene saw it, Scho
was rīte gladde, for scho desyred gretly for to see his fygure. /

² After þis ane of þe quene sonnes þat hight Candeolus went
furthe of þe Citee wit his wyfe and a fewe of his menzee for to
20 take þe sporte. And onane þe kyng of þe Bebrikes, knawying
þe fairehed of Candeolus wyfe, come appoñ þañ with a grete
multitude of meñ, and slew many of Candeolus menzee and
reste hym his wyfe & went his way. And þañ Candeolus and
24 his meñ þat ware leste on lyfe went till Alexander Oste for to
be-seke hym of helpe agaynes þe kyng of Bebrikes. And þe
wachis of þe oste take Candeolus & broghte hym bi-fore
Tholomeus, þat was þe secundu personñ after Alexander. And
28 Tholomeus spirred hym what he was, & what he did þare.
'I am,' quop he, 'quene Candace soñ and þis day als I went
wit my wyfe & a preuce menzee for to take þe sporte, þe kyng
of þe Bebrikes come apoñ vs wit a grete multitude of meñ and
32 hase slayne many of my menzee & reste me my wyfe. And
þare-fore I am comēñ heder for to beseke my lord, þe Emperour,
of helpe & socoure.' When Tholomeus had herd þis onane
he garte take kepe of Candeolus & went till Alexander tentis
36 and wakkned Alexander & talde hym & talde ilk a dele þat
Candeolus had talde hym. And whē Alexander hadd herde

sacrifice
to Amon.
Neverthe-
less.

* Leaf 41.
she
sends him
presents—
a crown of
gold, a
hundred
bezants,
slave-
children,
and vari-
ous strange
beasts.
These gifts
she sends
by a painter
who is to
portray
Alexander
on a parch-
ment skin.
And so it
was done.

Candeolus
goes out of
the city
with his
wife and a
few for
sport. A
hostile
king know-
ing the
wife's
beauty
comes and
reaves her
away. Can-
deolus
comes for
help and
is brought
to Ptolemy.
He pro-
claims who
he is and
his errand.

Ptolemy
sends to
Alexander
and
wakens
him.

¹ *Chenes* first written; but when the scribe had written *e* he wrote *y* over it and joined it to the next letter.

² Four lines with red capital *A*.

Alexander
bids Pto-
* Leaf 41
bk.

lemyputon
a crown as
though he
were Alex-
ander and
let him
send for
Antiochus,
and Alex-
ander will
come as
Antiochus
and ask
counsel of
Alexander
as though
he were
Antiochus.
Ptolemy
does as
Alexander
bids him.
Alexander
then coun-
sels that
the king
should be
command-
ed to deli-
ver up
Candeolus'
wife that
night
or other-
wise de-
stroy his
city.
Candeolus
thanks
Alexander
as though
he were
Antiochus.
Alexander
does as he
counsels
and with a
great force
calls on
the king
to deliver
back Can-
deolus' wife
or else they
will burn

his tale he badd' hym gange agayne tiff his tent and do a
corouñ on his hede and putt apoñ hyñ ðe kynges clothyng,
* and sett hym in the kynges trone & say vn-to Candeolus
pat he was kyng Alexander. 'And bidd an of thi meñ,' 4
quop he, 'feche vn-to ðe Antyochus, And late hym bryng me
to ðe insteedd' of Antyochus, and wheñ I come bi-for thee telle
me bi-for Candeolus¹ aif pat he talde the. And aske me
conseil, als I ware Antyochus, what es beste to do in pat mater.' 8
Tholomeus went and didd' aif als Alexander badd' hym. And
he asched' Alexander in stedd' of Antyochus be-for Candeolus
what was beste to do. And Alexander ansuerd' & sayde on
herand' Candeolus: 'Wirchipfull Emperour,' quop he, 'if it be 12
plesynge to your maiestee I will go wit Candeolus þis same
nyghte to ðe kyng of ðe Bebrikes, and comande hym one your
byhalue pat he zelde Candeolus his wyfe agayne. And if he
will noȝte do soo, I saif late hym witt pat ȝe saif sende a grete 16
powere to his Citee & bryne it vp stikke & stourre.' When
Candeolus hadd' herde hym say þus, he knelyd' vn-tiff hym &
said: 'A a, wirchipfull Antyochus,' quop he, 'wele walde it seme
þe for to be a kyng for ðe hye witt and ðe manhede pat es 20
in the.' Thañ kyng Alexander tuke wit hym a grete powere
and went apoñ ðe same nyghte wit Candeolus vn-to ðe Citee,
whare ðe kyng of ðe Bebrikes lay. And whañ þay come to ðe
citee, ðe waytes cryed' apoñ þañ, and askede what þay ware, 24
And Alexander ansuerd' & sayd: 'Candeolus,' quop he, 'es here
wit ane Oste of meñ, and ðe cause of his commynge es to be
restorede agayne of his wyfe ðe whilke your kyng raueste away
fro hyñ þis same day. And my lord kyng Alexander com- 28
mandeȝ ȝow pat ȝe delyuer hir anone, or sewrely we saif bryune
this citee & your selfe are we passe hethyñ.' And wheñ ðe meñ
of ðe citee herde this, þay ware ferde ynoghe² and onane went
to ðe kynges palace & brakke vp ðe ȝates, & tuke Candeolus 32
wyfe & delyuerd' hir tiff hir lorde. Þañ Candeolus kneled' douñ
tiff Alexander & saide vn-tiff hym: 'A a, my dere frende,' quop
he, 'wirchipfull Antyochus, Blyssed mot þou be for þis grete
gudnes pat þou hase schewed' mee. And I beseke the nowe pat 36

¹ The scribe has written *Antyochus* instead of *Candeolus*, then scratched it out, and written *Candeolus* again.

² The scribe has first written *yngh* and inserted the *o* above.

pou wilt vouche-saffe for to wende with me vn-to my moder quene Candace, þat scho may rewarde þe for þis þat pou hase done for me.' And when Alexander herde this he was riȝte gladde. For
 4 he had gretely desyrede for to see quene Candace & hir citee also. And þan he sayd: 'Goo we,' quop he, 'to þe emperour and asche hym leue.' And þay did¹ soo; and when he had leue, he went wit Candeolus. And as þay went to-gedir þay come til¹ heghe
 8 mountaynes þat reched vp to þe clowdes and apoñ þam þare growed trees of a wonderfult heghte lyke * vn-to² cedres þat bare appils of Inde riȝte grete, Of þe whilk Alexander wonnderde hym gretly. Þay saw also þare vynes growe wit wondere grete
 12 bobbis of grapes; for a mañ myȝte vnnetheȝ here añ of þam. Þare ware also trees þat bare nuttez als grete als gourddez. And þare ware also many apes. Fra þeine þay went & come to þe citee of quene Candace.
 16 And when Candace herd tell þat hir soñ Candeolus and his wyfe ware comande and ware safe & sounde, And at a messangere of kyng Alexander come wit þam, scho was wonder gladde; and onane scho arayed¹ hir ryally as a
 20 quene suld be, and sett apoñ hir hedde a erouñ full ryche all of golde sett full of precyouse stanes, and went furthe wit hir lordes to þe ȝates of hir palace, for to mete hir soñ Candeolus and Alexander messenger. This quene was a won-
 24 dere faire lady & a semely; And when Alexander saw hir, hym thoghte als he hade sene his moder Olympias. Hir palace was wonder ryalte & precyouse and all þe ruffe þare-of schane wit golde & precyouse stanes. Than quene Candace tuke Alexander
 28 bi þe hande, And ledd hym vp til¹ hir chambir, whare þare ware beddes arayed¹ wit þe fyneste clathes of golde þat myghte be getyñ; And þat chambir was of golde & precyous stanes, þe whilke are called Onychyns & þe burdez & þe hynkes of
 32 euour & Smaragdez & Amatistes. Þe Pelers of þe Palace ware all of Marble, And þar ware graueñ in þam cartes of werre, þat semed¹ to mannes sighte as þay hadd¹ bene rynnand; And Olyphauntes tredand¹ meñ vnder þaire fete. Vndernethe þat
 36 Palace rane a water wonder swete, & clere as any cristalfe.

the city. The citizens revolt and return Candeolus' wife. Candeolus thanks Alexander again as Antiochus, and invites him to come to his mother's city. At this Alexander * Leaf 42. ander is glad, for he had greatly desired to see Queen Candace and her city. They ask leave of the Emperor as it were. He goes with Candeolus. They come to mountains that reach up to the sky, with wondrous tall trees and vines with great bunches of grapes and nut-like gourds, and many apes were there. They come to Candace, who comes arrayed to meet them as a queen. She is of great beauty; and her palace is rich. She takes him to her privy chamber with its wonderful works of art.

¹ The scribe first wrote 'an heghe', but then scratched out the an.

² On leaf 41 we have the words *lyke to*

þe cedres. On leaf 42 it continues *lyke vn-to cedres*.

The next day she goes alone with Alexander to her withdrawing room, which lies beyond her bedroom. Her withdrawing room is moved on wheels by elephants. Alexander utters his wonder.

* Leaf 42 bk.

Queen Candace addresses him by name. Alexander's fear.

She shows him his portrait. Alexander fears again.

She rails at him that he, the conqueror of the world, is fallen into a woman's hands.

Alexander is angered. She rails at him further.

pat day Alexander ete wit quene Candace & hir childire.

¹ Apoñ þe morne quene Candace tuk Alexander by þe right hande & ledd' hym in-till hir bedd'-chambir, and nane wit þañ, Bot pay twa allañ. Þis chambir was couerde all ouer wit-in 4 wit golde & precious stanes. And it schane wit-in, as it had bene þe sonne. And oute of þis chambir scho ledd' hym in-till a wit-drawyng chambir made of cypresse. Þis chambir was sett apoñ foure wheles by crafte of clergy; And twenty xx^{ti} Oly- 8 phauntis drewe it whedir as scho wolde hafe it. And when Alexander & þe quene ware entrede in-to þat chambir, opane it stirredd' & by-gan for to remowe. And þañ Alexander was astonayde & meruaylled' hym gretly & said vn-to þe 12 quene: 'For sothe,' quop he, '& þir meruailis ware in oure cuntree þay ware riȝte commendable & mekift worthy * to be praysede.' The quene answerde: 'Þou saise sothe, Alexander,' quop scho, 'þay ware mare commendable amangeþ þe Grekeþ, 16 þañ amangeþ vs.' And also sone als Alexander herde hys name be neuenede, he was gretly trubblede, and his vesage bi-gañ to waxe pale, and his chere to change. And than the quene said efte vn-to hym: 'Alexander,' quop she, 'for to schewe 20 þe mare verrayly þat þou ert Alexander, com̃ with me.' And þañ scho tuk hym by þe hande & leedde hym in-till anoper chambir, and schewed' hym þare his awenñ Fygyre purtrayed' in a parchemyñ skyne. And when Alexander saw þat, he wex 24 pale & wanne & biganne to tremblee. And þañ þe quene said vn-till hym: 'Alexander,' quop scho, 'where-fore ert þou ferde, & why chaungeþ þou chere. Thou þat hase distroyed' all þe werlde; conquerour of Perse, of Inde, of Mede, and many oper 28 rewmes & landez, Now arte þou witowtten' scheddyng of blode falled' in þe dawngere & in þe handez of quene Candace vnausyli. And þare-by may þou wele knawe þat a manes hert sulde on na wyse be enhanced' in pride. For if all it boe þat ofte tymmes 32 grete prosperitee fall to mañ, Sodaynly falleþ aduersitee till hym when he leste wenes.' When Alexander herde þis he bigañ to grayste wit þe teethe and to torne his hede hedir & thedir, And quene Candace saide vn-till hym: 'Whare to 36 angers þou þe,' quop scho, '& trubleþ thi selfe? What may now thi grete Imperiañ glory, thi witt & thi mighte serue

¹ Four lines with red capital A.

the offe?' Alexander ansuerde & said: 'Forsothe', quop Alexander, 'resonably I am angry at my selfe bi-cause I hafe na swerde here.' Quop þe quene: 'I suppose þou hadd a
 4 swerde, nowe, what walde do þare-wit?' 'Sothely,' quop he, 'bi-cause I hafe wilfully betrayed my-selfe vn-to þe. First I solde sla þe and það, I dowte it nozt, I sulde be slayne for þe.' 'Now for sothe,' quop scho, 'þis was wisely & mañfully sayde.
 8 Neuer-þe-less be nathynge heuy. For as þou delyuerde my soñ wyfe Candeolus oute of þe daungere of þe kyng of Bebrikes Swaa sañt I delyuer the oute of þe daungere of thyñ enemys þat þou hase here. For I say þe in certayne, and it ware
 12 knaweñ þat þou ware here vn-to my menȝee, onane þay walde slaa þe by-cause þou slewe Porus þe kyng of Inde. For my soñ wyfe Carator was his doughter.' And when scho had said þis, Scho tuk Alexander bi þe hande & ledd hym forthe
 16 in-till hir forchambire and said vntill hir sones: 'My dere sonnes,' quop scho, 'I pray ȝow late vs make þis knyghte of Alexander gude chere, and schew hym añ þe humanytee þat we cañ. For Alexander has schewed vs grete frendchipe
 20 and grete gudnesse.' And það hir ȝongeste ansuerde & said: 'Moder,' * quop he, 'sothe it es þat he es a messangere of Alexanders, & a knyghte of his, and þat he delyuerde my broþer wyfe of þe handeȝ of þe kyng of þe Bebrikes and broghte hym
 24 & hir hame vn-till vs bathe safe & sownde. Neuer-þe-lesse my wyfe constreyneȝ me for to do Antyochus to dede bi-cause of þe dede of hir Fadir Porus, whilke Alexander slewe, So þat Alexander may hafe sorow for his knyghte. Quop quene
 28 Candace það: 'Lefe soñ, what wirchip may we get þare-offe if we slaa this knyghte þus traytourusly.' And það Candeolus sayde wit a grete Ire, 'Þis knyghte,' quop he, 'saued me & my wyfe & broghte vs hedir safe & sonde; And als sañt I hafe
 32 hym, agayne till his lorde, or I sañt be dede þarefore.' And Carator ansuerde & saide: 'Broþer,' quop he, 'what says þou? wilt þou þat aythere of vs here slaa oper?' 'In gud faythe broþer,' quop he, 'it es nozte my wilt, ne my liste. Neuer-
 36 þe-lesse if it be thi liste, I am redy, rather það þis knyghte be dedde.' And when þe quene saw þat hir soznes walde ayther of það slaa oper, scho was wonder sary, and tuk Alexander oñ syde, and saide vn-till hym preualy: 'A, a, kyng Alexander,'

Alexander is angry at himself. Had he but a sword he would slay her and die for it. She commends him, therefore she bids him not fear, for since he helped her son she will deliver him from another son who is Porus' son-in-law. She introduces Alexander as one of his own knights, Antiochus.

* Leaf 43 Her younger son would slay him for his wife's sake, to grieve Alexander.

Candeolus offers to defend Alexander with his own life.

Candace appeals to Alexander to save her sons from

combat by
his wit, so
that either
slay not
other.
Alexander
promises to
do so.
Alexander
offers to
betray
Alexander
to Carator.

Carator
assents.

Queen
Candace
parts from
Alexander
with many
gifts.

* Leaf 43
bk.

Alexander
and Can-
deolus
come to
a cave.
Alexander,
sacrificing,
goes in.
He sees a
great god
sitting with
eyes like
stars.
The god
greets him.

quop scho, 'whi wilt þou nozte schewe thi witt, and helpe
thurgþi thi wisdom þat my sonnes slaa nozt ayther of þam
oper?' And Alexander answerde and said: 'Late me goo
speke wit þam,' quop he. And scho lete hym goo. And 4
he went to þam and sayde vn-to Carator: 'For sothe, Carator,'
quop he, 'I late þe wite þat if þou slaa me, þou salt wyne bot
lyttill wirchipe pareoffe. For I say þe, kyng Alexander hase
many worthyer knyghtis wit hym þam I am; And parefore he 8
wilt hase littill sorowe for my dede. Trowes þou þat and
Alexander hadd lufed me wele þat he walde hase sent me hyder
to be killed amangeȝ ȝowe. Bot if þou wilt þat I bekeñ the
Alexander þe slaere of þi wyfe fader & bryng hym bi-for the, 12
Swere me þat what so I asche þe, þou salt graunte mee it, And
I sure þe bi þe faythe of my body, I salt bryng Alexander in-to
þis palace be-fore þe.' And when Carator herde this, he was
riȝte glade, and trowed þat that Alexander said: And so ware 16
þe twa breper pesede, And highte Alexander þat his askyng
sulde be fulfilled als ferforthe als þaire powere reched; if so ware
þat he helde couenant. Þam quene Candace leedd Alexander on
syde & sayd vn-till hym in preuatee: 'Wele ware me,' quop scho, 20
'myghte I ilke day hase þe present be-fore myñ eghne as I hase
myñ awenñ childere. For thurgþ the sulde I ouercome all
myñ Enemys.' And þam [scho] gaffe Alexander a corouñ of golde
sett full of precyous dyamandeȝ, and a mantill Imperiall 24
of a clathe of golde * wit sternes wofen þare-in, and sett full of
precyouse stanes. And þam scho kyssed hym & oper preuee
thynges didd till hym, And badde hym goo in hir blyssyng.
1 Than kyng Alexander and Candecolus went furthe all that 28
daye, And come till a grete spelunc, and þare þay herberde
þam. And Candecolus saide till Alexander: 'In this spelunc,'
quop hee, 'þat you here seeȝ all goddeȝ ere wount for to ete and
halde þaire consail.' And þam onane Alexander made sacra- 32
fyceȝ till his goddeȝ and enterde in-to þe caue by hym ane.
And þare he sawe a myrke clowde, & in þat myrknesse, he sawe
as it ware bryghte sternes, and amangeȝ þase sternes he saw
a grete godd sitt, And his eghne lyke twa lanternes. And when 36
Alexander saw hym he was so fered þat he was as it hadd bene

¹ Red capital T in four lines space and small t in margin.

in a transynge. And þaṇ þe godd said vn-to hym: 'Haile,
Alexander,' quop he. And Alexander ansuerde & said: 'Lorde,'
quop he, 'what art þou?' 'I am,' quop he, 'Sensoṇchosis
4 þat gouerneþ þe kyngdom of þe werlde and þat hase made meṇ
sugettes vn-to the. And þou hase bigged þiselfe many ryatte
citeez. Bot temple walde þou nane make in þe wirchippe of
me.' And Alexander ansuerd & said: 'Lorde,' quop he, '& þou
8 wiþ graunt me þat I saþ wit prosperitee come in-to Macedoyne
I saþ ordeyne the a temple þare saþ noȝte be swilke anoþer
in aþ þe werlde.' And he ansuerd agayne & saide: 'For
sothe,' quop hee, 'Macedoyne saþ þou neuer see wit thyṇ
12 eghne. Neuer-þe-lesse walke Innermare & luke what þou seez.'
Alexander þaṇ went forthirmare & saw anoþer myrke clowde
and saw a godd sitt in a trone lyke a kynge, and Alexander said
vn-till hym: 'Lorde,' quop he, 'what art þou?' 'I am,' quop he,
16 'þe begynnyng of aþ goddez and Serapis es my name. I sawe
the in þe lande of liby & nowe I see þe here.' 'Serapis,'
quop Alexander, 'I beseke þe tesse me wha it es þat saþ sla
me.' Quod Serapis: 'I talde þe bi-fore, þat and þe cause
20 of a manes dede ware knawen vn-till hym, he solde dy for
sorowe. Þou hase bygged a gloricus citee agaynes þe whilke
many emperours saþ fighte. Þare-in saþ thi graue be made
and þare-in saþ þou be beried.' And þaṇ Alexander come oute
24 of þe caue, and tuke his leue at Candeolus and went till his Oste.

¹ One þe morne he remowed his Oste And come till a valay
þat was full of grete ²serpentes þe whilk hade in paire heuedis
Grete smaragdez. Thir serpenteþ * lyffede aþ wit gyngere and
28 pepir þat growede in þe valaye. And ilke a zere pay feghte to-
gedir and many of þaṇ slaeþ oþer. Off þe forsaid Smaragdes
tuk Alexander suṇ wit hym of þe gretteste þat he couthe
gett.

32 ³Fra þeine pay remowed & come in-till a place in þe whilke
þare ware besteþ þat hade one ilke a fote twa clees as swyne
hase, and þase clees ware throe fote brade wit þe whilke pay
smate Alexander knyghtes. Pay had also heuedes lyke swyne
36 & tayles lyke lyouns. Þare ware also amangeþ þaṇ grypes þe

Sensoncho-
sis reproves
Alex-
ander's
neglect
of him.
Alexander
swears to
build him
a temple in
Macedonia.
The god
tells him he
shall never
see it again.

Alexander
goes fur-
ther into
the cave
and sees a
god en-
throned in
the dark,
Serapis,
who fore-
tells him
where
he shall
be buried.

On the
morrow he
removes

* Leaf 44.
his army
and comes
to a valley
of strange
serpents.
They see
other
strange
beasts and
griffons
who attack
Alex-
ander's
knights.
They could

¹ Three lines with red capital O and small o in the margin.

² MS. 'serpe' crossed out and 'serpentes'

written.

³ Three lines with red capital F and small f in the margin beside.

carry off a knight and his horse. Alexander's knights fight manfully against them. They come to a great river and make boats to cross over. The people of the country send Alexander gifts.

They find women in that river who slay men. Two of them they capture. They come to Gog and * Leaf 44 bk. Magog, who are the ten tribes of Israel led out of their own land by a Persian king. They ask Alexander leave to come forth.

whilke smate knyghtes in þe vesageȝ reghte felly. þay ware so strange þat ane of þam wolde bere away an armed knyghte & his horse also. þam kynge Alexander rade hedir & þedir amangeȝ his meñ and comforthed þam and badd þam feghte 4 manly agaynes þam wit speres and wit arowes. And so þay did. Bot þare was slayne of Alexander knyghtes ccviii.

¹ And fra þeine þay removed and come till a grette ryuer þe whilke was twenty furlange on brede fra þe ta banke to 8 þe toper. And on pase bankes þare growed redis wonder grete and hye. Of pase redes garte Alexander mak bates & anynte þam wit terre & talgh of besteȝ, And badd his knyghtis row ouer þe water in pase bates. And þay did soo. And when þe 12 [pople]² of þe cunntree herde tell of þe commynge of Alexander & his Oste, þay sent hym gyftes of swylk thynges als was in paire cuntree, þat es at say Grete spoungeȝ bathe whitte & purple & schelles of þe see so grete þat an of þam walde 16 halde twa pekkes or three. þay sent hym also wormes þat þay drew owte of þat ryuer grettere þam a manes thee, and þay ware swetter of taste þam any fysche. þay gaffe hym Cukstoles att rede þat ware of a wonderfull gretnesse. In þat ryuer ware 20 womans þat ware wonder faire & þay hade on þam mekiß here þat rechedd doun to thaire fete. þir women, when þay saw any straunge meñ swymme in þat riuer, owper þay drowned þam in þe water, or ellis þay walde lede þam to þe redeȝ þat 24 growed on þe water bankes and garre þam lye by þam ay till any lyfe was in þam. þe Macedoynes persued þam & tuke twa of þam and broghte þam till Alexander,* and þay ware als white as any snawe, and þay ware ten fote lange and paire 28 teethe ware lyke dogge teethe.

³ Efter this Alexander went and closed in a maner of folkes þat are called Gog & Magog, with-in þe hilleȝ of Caspy. þis folkeȝ were of þe ten kyndeȝ of Israel, and þay ware leedd owte 32 of paire awenð land bi a kyng of Perse be-cause of paire synneȝ and halden in thralledom. And þay asched Alexander leue for to wende furth of þat cuntree. And Alexander gert spirre þe cause of paire thraldom, and he was encensed þat be-cause þay 36

¹ Three lines with red capital A and small a in margin beside.

² MS. reads, And when þe of þe cunntree

(? þe[i] of, &c.).

³ Three lines with red capital E and small e in the margin beside.

hadd' forsakeñ paire goddez lawe, þat es at say, godd' of Isrl',
 and wirchipeð Calues & oper Mawmettes, þarefore þay ware
 ledd' oute of paire awenñ laude & halden in thralldom, and þat
 4 prophetes had prophiced' be-fore þat þay sulde neuer come oute
 of thralldom bi-fore agayne þe day of dome. And þañ Alexander
 ansuerde & said þat he sulde sperre þañ In mare seurely. And
 þañ he garte close all þe entreez wit stane & lyme & sand; Bot
 8 all þat he garte make on þe day was fordome on þe nyghte. And
 when Alexander saw þat mannes laboure myghte noȝte stande in
 stede, he bi-soghte godd' of Isrl' þat if it ware his liste þat þay
 habade þare, þat he walde close þañ in. And þe nexte nyghte
 12 aftir ilk a cragge felle tiff oper, and so þare may nathynge
 passe in nor owte. And þare-by it semez þat it es noȝte goddez
 will þat þay come oute. Neuer-þe-lesse abowte þe Ende of þe
 werlde þay sañ breke oute and do mekiñ schathe & slaa many
 16 meñ.

¹ Fra þeine þay remowed & come to þe grete See Occeane. In
 þat See þay sawe ane Ile a littiff fra þe lande. And in þat Ile
 þay herde meñ speke grewe. And þañ Alexander commanded
 20 þat suñ of his knyghts sulde do off paire clathes and swyme
 ouer to þe ile. And þay did' soo. And als sone als þay come
 in þe See þare come gret crabbes vp oute of þe water & pullede
 þañ downne to þe grounde & drowned þañ.
 24 ² Thanne remowed þay fra thethyñ and went ay endlande
 þe See syde to-warde þe solstice of wynter trauellande xi days;
 and at þe laste þay come to a reede See, and þare þay lugede
 þañ. Þare was faste by a Mountayne wonder hye, One
 28 þe whilke Alexander went vp. And when he was abowñ on
 þe heghte þare-offe, hym thoghte þat he was nerre þe Firmament
 þan þe erthe; þañ he ymaged in his hert swilk a gynñ how
 he myghte make * grippes bere hym vp in-to þe ayere. And
 32 onane he come doune of þe Mountayne and garte come bi-fore
 hym his Maistre wrightes and comandid' þañ þat þay sulde
 make hym a chayer and trelesse it wit barrez of Ireñ one ilk
 a syde so þat he myȝte sauely sitt þare-in. And þañ he gart
 36 brynge foure gripes and tye þañ faste wit Ireñ cheynes vn-to þe
 chayere, and in þe ouermare party of þe chayere he gart putt

But he
 learns that
 they had
 forsaken
 the True
 God for
 idols, and
 therefore
 they are
 banished
 and im-
 prisoned
 till Dooms-
 day.
 Alexander
 says he
 shall bar
 them in
 more
 surely.
 God an-
 swers his
 prayers,
 and rocks
 fall down
 and shut
 them in
 until
 Doomsday,
 when they
 shall come
 forth to do
 great harm.
 They come
 to the sea
 and an isle
 near the
 shore.
 They hear
 men speak
 Greek
 there.
 Alex-
 ander's
 messengers
 to the isle
 are killed
 by crabs.
 They travel
 along the
 * Leaf 45.
 seashore to
 the Red
 Sea.
 Alexander
 goes up a
 mountain.
 His master
 workers
 make him

¹ Four lines with red capital *F* and small *f* in the margin beside.

² Three lines with red capital *T* and small capital *T* in margin.

a chair
whereby
he is borne
by griffons
up into the
air.

He comes
down about
ten days'
march
from his
army.
Then he
lusteth to
know the
depths of
the sea.
The master
glaziers
make him
a glazen
cage with
iron bars
and it is
lowered
down
into the
sea, and
there he
beholds
many won-
ders and
strange
beasts until
he is drawn
up again
by his
knights.

They
march on
and have
to fight
* Leaf 45
bk.
strango
horned
beasts.
They come
to the wil-
derness of

mete for þe grippes. And þaȝ he wente and sett hym in þe chayere. And onane þe grippes bare hym vp in þe ayer so hye þat *Alexander* thoghte all þe erthe na mare þaȝ a flure þare meȝ thresschez corne, and þe See lyke a dragoȝ abowte 4 þe erthe. Þaȝ sodaynly a speeyall vertu of godd' vmbilapped þe grippes þat gart þaȝ discende doune to þe erthe in a felde : ten .x. day iournee fra þe Oste, and he hadd' na hurt ne na schathe in þe chayere. Bot wit grete disesse at þe laste he 8 come tilf his Oste.

¹ After þis *Alexander* ymagened in his hert þat he walde know þe preuates þat are in þe see. And onane he gart come bifore hym all þe Maister glasyers þat ware in þe Oste, And comandede 12 þaȝ to make hym a grete tounne of passandy clere glasse þat he myghte thurgh it clerely see all maner of thyng þat ware witowtten it. And whē it was made he gart trelesse it al abowte witowtten wit barres of yreȝ and feste þare-to lang cheynes of 16 yreȝ, and gart a certane of þe strangeste & maste tristy knyghtes þat langed vn-tilf hym halde þir cheynes. And þaȝ he went in-to þe tounne & gart pykke wele þe entree whare he went in, and þaȝ late it douȝ into þe See. And þare he sawe dyuerse 20 schappes of fisches of dyuerse colours ; and sum he sawe hafe þe schappe of dyuerse bestez here one þe lande, gangande on fete as bestez dose here & etande fruyte of treesse þat growez on þe See grunde. Þir bestez come tilf hym. Bot onane as pay 24 saw hym thorow þe glasse pay fledde fra hym. He sawe þare also many oper meruaylous thynges, þe whilke he walde tell na maȝ bi-cause meȝ walde noghte hafe trowed þaȝ if he had talde þaȝ, and at a certayne houre þase þat he hadd' assyngned 28 be-fore, his knyghtes drewe hym vp oute of þe See.

² Fra þeine pay Remowed Folowande þe bankes of þe Rede See, and lugeȝ þaȝ in a place, whare þare ware wylde Bestez that hade oȝ paire heuedis hornes lyke vn-to *saves, and pay 32 ware als scharpe als swerdeȝ. And with thire hornes pay slewe & hurte many knyghtis of *Alexanders* & cloue paire cheldes in sonder. Neuer-þe-lesse *Alexander* knyghtis slew of þaȝ ccccli.

³ And fra þeine pay removed and come in-tilf wilderness 36

¹ Four lines with red capital *A* and small *a* in the margin beside.

² Three lines with red capital *F* and

small *f* in margin besides.

³ Three lines with red capital *A* and small *a* in the margin beside.

bitwex þe reed¹ See and Araby, whare grete multitude of Pepir growed²; And þare ware many grete nedders wit hornnes on paire hedes lyke tuppe hornes, wit þe whilke þay smate Alexander knyghtis riȝt felly. Off þase nedderes slew þe Macedoynes a grete party.

pepper trees and horned adders.

¹ Þeine þay removed¹ and luge² in a place whare many Rynosephales ware, þe whilke hade heuedes & manes lyke horseȝ. And þay hade grete bodys, and wonder grete teethe and lange, and oute of paire mouthes þay schotte flawmeȝ of fyre. And when þay saw þe Oste luge þare þay come & assaylled³ þam. And Alexander raȝd hyder and thedir amangeȝ þe oste and comforted⁴ his knyghtes and bad þam feghte manly wit þase monstres. And so þay didd⁵. Neuer-þe-lesse þare ware a grete multitude of his knyghtis slayne of þase besteȝ. Bot of þe Rynoccephales þare was slayne an hugge multitude.

They meet and have to fight Rhinoceri that spit forth fire.

They fight them fiercely.

² Það þay removed¹ fra þeine and come in-till a champayne cuntree and luge² þam þare, And lay þare a certane days, Bi-cause of his horse Buktyphalas þat feiȝ seke þare; of þe whilke sekenesse he dyed³. And when Alexander saw hym dedd⁴ he made grete dole for hym and weped⁵ for hym riȝt sare. For he hadd⁶ borne hym in many a Batelle, and broghte [hym] oute of many pereffis. And þare-fore when he was dede Alexander gart doo aboute hym grete exequyes and gart make hym a full riche tounge & a hye and did⁷ hym þare-in and made a grete citee þare, þe whilke in mynde of his horse he gart call Buktyphalas.

Alexander's steed Bucephalus dies. He makes a rich tomb and builds a city round him.

³ Fra þeine þay removed¹ and come till a ryuere ⁴ þat was called Cytan or Deciracy whare meȝ of þe cuntree broghte hym v̄ Olyphantes and v̄ cartes of werre. And fra þeine þay removed² & come till kynges ȝerses palace. And in þat Palace þay fande beddeȝ of clene golde many a thowsande. Þare ware also grete fewles white als doufes, þe whilke had knawying be-fore of a seke maȝ wheder he schulde lyffe or dye. For if þay by-helde þe seke maȝ in þe vesage, he schulde mende & fare wele. And if þay tourned³ þam awaywarde witowtten

They come to the palace of Xerxes.

The birds that fore-tell the life or death of a man.

¹ Three lines.

² Three lines.

³ MS. has a small *f* written in margin, but no space for the large capital to be put.

⁴ The scribe first wrote *reuer*, then altered it to *ryuer*, then scratched it all out and wrote *ryuere* after it.

* Leaf 46. doute he schulde dye,* and if pay turned hym þe bakke wit
owtten dowe he sulde dye.

They come
to Babylon
and cap-
ture it.

Thence
Alexander
writes to
his mother
and to
Aristotle.

¹ Fra þeine pay removed and come to þe grete Citee of
Babiloyne and wanne it oo werre and slew þe kyng þe *pare-offe* 4
& þe Captayne also. And þe duelled vn-till his lyffes end,
and þat was Bot vij seuē Monethes. In þat mene tyme
Alexander sent a *lettre* till Olympias his Moder and till his
Mayster Arestotle, latand þaū witte of þe Batells and þe dyssese 8
þat pay suffred bathe wynters and Somers in Inde and oper
cuntreez, and also of þe Batells þat pay hadd wit dyuerse
Monstres. And þaū Arestotle wrate anoper *lettre* till Alex-
ander agayne þe whilke was of this tenour :

Aristotle
writes to
Alexander
again
praising
him greatly
for his
victories.

² Un-till Alexandere þe grete kyng of kynges Arestotle
sendeȝ ioy and seruyce. Wheñ I hade redde *your* wyrchipfull
lettres I was gretly astonayd. For whilke cause I desyre with
all myñ hert for to fynde lonyng þat I myghte zelde vn-to þe. 16
I take witnesse at oure goddeȝ þat for þe passande hardenesse of
þi hert & þe grete auentours þat þou hase put þe in, þou erte
wele worthy for to be loued & praysede. For þou hase sene &
assayed thynges þat neuer mañ or þis durste assaye. Whare-for 20
thankyng & lonyng I zelde to þe makere of all þis wyde
werlde þat swylke victoryes hase grantede vn-to þe. For þou hase
ouercommen all & nane hase ouercomen þe. Full blyssede are
all thy prynceȝ þat hase bene obeyande vnto þe, and helped þe 24
in all thi disseses.'

Alexander
has a won-
drous
throne
made.

³ Afftir þis Alexander gart make in Babyloyn a wonder
curious trone ⁴ of golde, *pare* was noȝte swilke anoper in þe
werlde. For þe grekeȝ broghte so mekill golde oute of *perse* & 28
oute of Inde, þat it ware wonder for to telle. Þis ilke toure
was twlue cubyteȝ hie and by twelue greceȝ ⁵ men ascended
pare-too, and pase greeȝ ware all of golde. Þis trone was
wonderfully wroghte and sett apoñ twelue ymageȝ of golde, þe 32
whilke trone þe forsaid ymageȝ helde vp wit paire hende. And
on pase twelue ymageȝ ware wreten þe names of þe twelue
prynceȝ of Macedoyn. Þe seet of þe trone was of a Smaragde,

The throne
of Alex-
ander with
its images,
its ruby,
and its in-
scriptions.

¹ Three lines with big capital *F* followed by small capital.

² Four lines with red capital *U* and small *u* in the margin.

³ Four lines with red capital *A* and

small *a* in the margin beside.

⁴ *ture* scratched out and *trone* written in.

⁵ The first part of this word reads *gr + blot + ceȝ*.

& þe sydeþ þare off ware of Topazes & in ilkañ of þe greeþ were sett dyuerse maneres of precyouse stanes. In þe summyt of þis trone þare was sett a ruby þat schane on þe nyghte as it hade bene þe Mone. In þis trone also was þare sett oñ ilke a syde dyuerse ymageþ on þe whilke ware wretyn̄ bathe in latyne & in grew* verseþ þat contened̄ all þe nammes of þe rewmes & cuntreeþ þat Alexandere had conquered̄ and ware sugetes vn-till hym.

* Leaf 46 bk.

The crown of Alexander and the inscriptions thereon.

The strange child born in Babylon half alive and half dead, half man and half animal, and the meaning it has. The death of Alexander and the coming of his successor. In what they shall not be like him.

The sorrow of Alexander.

Antipator wishes for

8 ¹ After þis ⁴ Alexander gert make a corow̄ of golde sett full of all maner of precyouse stanes, and gert wryte apow̄ it a tytyle in grew & in latyn̄: 'Ortus & occasus, Aquilo michi seruit & Auster.' Þat es at saye: 'Est & weste, Northe & southe dose seruyce vn-to me.' In the mene tyme whils Alexander was in babyloyne, a womañ was delyuer of a knaue childe þe whilke fra þe heuede to þe nauyfl̄ hadd̄ schappe of mañ, & was borne dedd̄. And fra þe nauyfl̄ downwardeþ it had lyknesse of dyuerse besteþ and was qwykke. Þis Monstre was taken̄ & broghte till Alexander; and als soñ als he saw it he meruaylled̄ gretly þare-off, and gart come bi-fore hym̄ a philosopher þat couthe of wiche-crafte, & aschede hym̄ what it sygnifyed̄. And whē þe philosopher saw it, he syghede, & saye wepand̄ sayde vn-to hym̄: 'Sothely wirchipfull̄ emperour,' quop̄ he, 'þe tyme commez nere that þou sall̄ passe oute of this werlde.' 'Telle me,' quop̄ Alexander, 'whereby þou knowes þat.' And þe philosophre
20 ansuerde & sayde: 'My lorde,' quop̄ he, 'þe halfe of þis Monstre þat hase þe schappe of mañ & es dedd̄, betakens þat þou sall̄ passe out of þis werlde in haste. And þe toper party þat hase þe lyknes of dyuerse besteþ & es on lyfe, betakyngeþ þe kynges
28 þat sall̄ come after þe. Bot þare sall̄ nane of þaū be lyke vn-to þe, na mare þaū a beste es lyke vn-till̄ a mañ.' Whē Alexander herde þis he was wonder heuy, and sare wepand̄ he sayde on þis wyse: 'O Allmyghty Iubiter,' quop̄ he, 'what
32 menez it þat my dayes sall̄ be so schortte? Me thynke þat it had bene semely þat I had leffed̄ langere for till̄ haf endid̄ thyngeþ þat are in my thoghte. Bot for als mekil̄ als it es noȝte plesande vn-to þe, I beseke the þat þou resayffe me whē
36 I sall̄ passe hethen̄ als thyñ awē seruante.'

² In this mene tyme þare was in Macedoyne a lorde þat highte

¹ Three lines with red capital *A* and small *a* in the margin beside.

² Four lines with red capital *I* and small *i* in margin beside.

the death
of Alex-
ander, who
is warned
of him by
Olympias.

* Leaf 47.

He buys
poison and
gives it to
his son to
have it
given to
Alexander
by a pro-
tégé whom
he has
struck.

His protégé
gives
the king
a drop of
poison in
his cup
from his
thumb.
Alexander
cries
out with
pain, but
forbears
awhile
to leave
the feast.

Antipater, þe whilke of langetyme be-fore hadd' casten for þe dedde of Alexander; And wit many oper þat he hadd' confedred' vn-till hym he conspyred' for to brynge it tyll ende, bot he myghte neuer come aboute þer-with. For Olympias, Alex-
ander moder, wrate vn-till hym ofte-sythes and warned hym þat he scholde be warre wit Antipater & his childre, and here-fore was Antypater wonder sary. So apou a tyme he vmby-thoghte hym þat he myghte neuer come aboute wit his purpose 8 for to slaa Alexander, bot if it ware thurgh enpuysonyng. *And so apou a daye he went till a Soteff leche, and boghte of hym a maner of drynke made of puyson that was so felle & so ranke þat þare myghte no vesselie halde it Bot a vesselie made of Ireñ; 12 and þare-in he putt it. And þa he gaffe it his son Cassandre, and bad' hym bere it till his broþer Iobas and byd' hym, quop he, gyffe it to kyng Alexander in his drynke, when he seez his tyme. This ilk Iobas was a faire zong mañ & was duellyng with 16 Alexander, and gretly by-luffede & cheriste of hym. Bot so it be-felle apou a tyme þat Alexander smate Iobas on þe heued wit a warderere for na trespasse. Where-fore Iobas was gretly angred' and greued' at Alexander and consented'till his dede, and 20 tuke þe puyson of his broþer þat was ordeyned for Alexander dede þat luffed' hym so mekill.

¹ And apou a daye Alexander gart ordeyne a grete reuetie in Babyloyne and called' þare too all his prynce; on ilke a syde. 24 And as he satt at þe mete Imanage his prynce; he was wonder mery & gladde & iocund; and reheted' his lordez & prayed þa þat þay schulde be mery. Þa Iobas þat serued' þe kyng of his coupe tuke of þe puyson a porcyon, and putt it vnder þe nayle 28 of his thowme, and broghte þe coppe to þe kyng full of wyne. And as he gaffe it to þe kyng, he lete þe puyson falle in þe wyne priualy. And als sone als þe kyng hadd' dronkeñ þe puyson, Sudaynly he gaffe a grete scryke, and lened' hym down 32 towarde þe riȝte syde. For hym thoghte reghte als a mañ hadd' smyten hym in-to þe lyuere wit a suerde. Neuer-þe-lesse he feyned' & forbare a while & suffred' a grete penance, and when he myȝte na langere habyd, he rase vp fra þe burde and 36 saide till his lordez & his knyghtes: 'Lordyngis,' quop he,

¹ Three lines with red capital *A* and small *a* in the margin beside.

'I pray ȝow sitt ȝe still & eteȝ & drynkeȝ & beeȝ mery.' Bot
 pay ware gretly troubbled and rase vp fra þe burdeȝ and stode
 witowtten for to see þe ende. And Alexander went in-till
 4 his chambir gretly tourmentid, and soghte a fethir for to putt
 in his throtte for to garre hym hafe a vomet of þe puyson
 þat he hadd resayffed. And Iobas, þat was cheffe of all this
 hye treson, gatt a fethir & enoynt it wit þe same puyson
 8 & broghte it till Alexander; and he tuk it & putt it in his
 throtte, and belyfe * þe puyson vexed hym ay mare & mare.
 And þan Alexander bade ane gange & open þe palace ȝates
 þat ware on Eufrates banke. And alle þat nyȝte he woke
 12 in grete payneȝ & tourment. And aboute mydnyȝhte he rase
 oute of þe bedde þat he lay in and putt oute þe lyghte þat brynt
 by-fore hym, and for he myȝhte noghte ga vprighteȝ, he creped
 one hende & one fete doune to-warde Eufrateȝ for till hafe
 16 drownned hym selfe, þat þe strenth of þe water myȝth hafe
 borne hym away whare neuer man solde hafe fund hym.

And Rosañ his wyfe folowed as faste as scho myȝhte. And
 when scho come to hym scho fette vpon hym & embraced hym
 20 in hir armes & said vn-till hym: 'Allas, my lorde Alexander,'
 quop scho, 'wilt þou now leue me & gaa slaa thi-selfe.' And
 scho wepe þat it was dole to see; and Alexander ansuerde
 & sayde: 'I beseke þe Rosañ,' quop he, 'þat ert so dere to me
 24 & so swete, late nane wit of myñ Endynge, if all it be þat we
 may na langare hafe ioȝ togedir.' And þan Rosañ ledd
 Alexander agayne to his bedd, and layde her armes aboute his
 nekke and kyssede hym many a tyme, and sare wepand said
 28 vn-till hym: 'A, A, my swete lorde,' quop scho, 'if þine ende be
 nowe comen, ordayne firste for vs or ȝe passe heȝine.' And
 onane he callede vn-till hym Iobas & bade hym feche vn-till
 hym Semyon his notary. And when he was comen he garte
 32 bere hym down in-to þe haulle, and he garte come by-fore hym
 all his prynceȝ & bade his notary wryte his testament bi-fore
 þan all on þis wyse.

¹ 'ARestotle oure dere Maister, we comande the & prayse the,
 36 þat of oure awen tresour þou sende to þe presteȝ of Egipt þat
 ministrez in þe temple, whare-in oure body sal be beryed

He uses a
 feather to
 spew it
 forth, but
 again the
 feather is
 poisoned.

* Leaf 47
 bk.
 In his
 agony he
 goes to the
 Euphrates
 to drown
 himself.

But his
 wife
 Roxana
 follows and
 prevents
 him
 and tries to
 console
 him.

She asks
 him first to
 provide for
 her.

He calls his
 notary.

He com-
 mands
 Aristotle
 to give to

¹ Three lines with red capital A, and small a in the margin beside, small capital R following.

the Egyptian priest
of his man-
soleum.
Ptolemy
is the
governor.
If Roxana
bear a man
child he
shall be
Emperor;
* Leaf 48.
if a girl
they shall
choose
their own.
He appor-
tions his
domains.

The earth-
quake.

The Macedo-
nians
come
armed and
demand to
see their
Emperor.

He prays
his knights
bear him
before
them.

He praises
them.
They speak
with him
and pray

& entered, ȝ besandeȝ of golde. Also I will that Tholomeus pat
es kepare of oure body be ȝour Gouvernour, And forgetis noghte
my laste will, Bot lateȝ my testament be alway bi-fore ȝour
eghne so pat it be fulfilled & noghte forgetyñ. My will es 4
also pat if Rosañ my wyfe be delyuer of a knafe childe pat he be
ȝour Emperour and gyffez hym what name so ȝow liste, and
if scho be delyuer of a mayden childe, pañ es it my will pat the
Macedoynes chese pañ a kynge, and pat my wyfe be lady of * aȝ 8
my mobles. Also I will pat Tholomeus be kyng of Egipt, and
pat he tak till his wyfe Cleopatra, pat my Fader wedded sum-
tyme here bi-fore, and pat he be lorde & prynce ouer all þe
lordez of þe Este eueñ vn-to Bactriañ. Also I will pat my 12
broþer Arrideus be kynge of þe Pelopones, also pat Cleopater
be kyng of Perse, Mellagere kyng of Ethopy, And Anthiochus be
kyng vn-to þe landez of Gog & magoge, Arestez kyng of Inde,
Lissymacus lorde of Seleuce, Lythamon kyng of hungary, Caulus 16
kyng of Ermony, Illicus kyng of Dalmace. Symeon my Notary,
will I, be Kyng of Capadoce & Pamphily, Cassander & Iobas be
lordez vn-to þe Ryuer pat es called Soff, Antipater þaire Fader
be kyng of Cicile.' When this testament was in wrytynge 20
bi-fore Alexander Sodeynly pare come a thonner & a leuennynge
& ane erthedouñ rizte a hedcus, so pat aȝ babyloyne qwoke
pare-wit. And than thorowte aȝ Babyloyne þe noyse rase pat
Alexander was dede. And pañ aȝ þe Macedoynes rasse hallely 24
and come armed to þe Palace, and cryed on þe prynceȝ & said
vn-to pañ: 'Sothely,' quop þay, 'but if ȝe onane schewe vs oure
Emperour we saȝt slaa ȝow ilk ane.' And when kyng Alexander
herde swilke noyse he askede whate it ment, and þe prynceȝ 28
ansuerde & sayde: 'Þe Macedoynes,' quop þay, 'are comen armede
hedir before þe ȝates, & says sekerly bot if þay see ȝow þay saȝt
slaa vs alle are þay passe hepine.' And when Alexander herde
þis, he badd' his knyghtis pat þay scholde take hym vp, and bere 32
hym in-to þe consistorye. And þay did soo. And pañ he garte
open þe Palace ȝates pat þe Macedoynes myȝte come by-fore
hym. And pañ kyng Alexander be-gan to comend' pañ of
þaire strenth & þaire grete doghtynes, and charged pañ pat 36
þay scholde be in pesse & reste ilkane wit oþer. Pañ þe
Macedoynes, sare wepande, sayde vn-till Alexander: 'A, A,
wirchipfull,' quop þay, 'ordayne & tesse vs are ȝe passe

heyne whan̄ 3e wiſt þat be oure emperour efter 3ow.' And Alexander anſuerd̄ & ſayde, 'A, A, my dere knyghtis,' quop he, 'when̄ I am dede whaym̄ ſo 3e wiſt cheſe, be 3our emperour
 4 efter mee.' And þay anſuerde, 'Lord,' quop þay, 'we beſeke 3owe þat 3e wiſt graunt vs Perdic to be oure Emperour.' 'I vouche wele ſaffe,' quop Alexander, 'þat Perdic be 3our Emperour. Gers hym come be-fore mee.' 'And when̄ he was
 8 comen̄ by-fore hym he gaſſe hym þe kyngdome* of Macedoyne wit þe Emperourchiþe. And he gaſſe hym alſo Roſan̄ for to be his wyffe, and prayed̄ hym þat he walde be gude & gentiſt tiſt hir. And þan he kyſſede aſt þe lordez & þe knyghtis of
 12 Macedoyne ilkane after oper, and ſighed and weped̄ wonder ſare. Þare was þan̄ ſo grete dole & wepynge, þat it was lyke a thonere. For men̄ Suppoſez þat nozte allanly men̄ made Sorow for þe dede of ſo worthy ane Emperour, Bot alſo þe ſon̄
 16 and aſt þe oper planetis and elementes ware troubled.

² A prynce of Macedoyne ſtode nere Alexander bedd̄ þat highte Seleucus, & wit grete dole & wepynge he ſayd̄: 'A, A, þou wirchipfull emperour,' quop he, 'what ſalt we do when̄ þou
 20 ert dede. Philippe þi fader gouerned̄ vs wele & aſte oure rewme, Bot þe gentiſnes & þe largesse of the na tunge may teſt.' And þan̄ Alexander ſett hym vp in his bedd̄ and gaſſe hym ſelfe a grete flappe on þe cheke and by-gan̄ for to wepe riȝte
 24 bitterly, and in þe langage of Macedoyne, he ſayde on þis wyſe :

'Full waa es me vnhappy wreche,' quop he, 'þat euer I was borne to man̄. For now Alexander dyes and Macedoyne ſalt waxe ay leſſe & leſſe and emeniſche day bi day.' Than̄ aſt þe Macedoynes wit an hye voyce and bitter wepynge ſayd vn-tiſt hym: 'Better it ware tiſt vs,' quop þay, 'for to dy wit þe þan̄ for to ſe þe dy in oure preſence. For wele we wate þat, efter þe dede of the, þe kyngdom̄ of Macedoyne es vndone for euere.
 32 Allas oure wirchipfull Alexander, why leſes þou vs here and wendeȝ away be thyñ ane, withowten̄ thi Macedoynes?' Than̄ kyng Alexander alway ſighand̄ & wepand̄ ſaid vn-to þam: 'A, A, my dere Macedoynes,' quop he, 'fra this tyñ forwarde
 36 ſalt neuer 3our name haſe lordchiþe ouer þe Barbarenes.' And þan̄ þe Macedoynes cryed̄ and ſayde: 'O wirchipfull lorde,' quop

him for Perdicas for their king.

He gives

* Leaf 48 bk.

Perdicas Macedonia and the Emperour-ship, and alſo Roxana as wife. He kiſſes all the Macedonian Lords.

Seleucus grieues by Alexander's bedside that they ſhall have no good leader.

Alexander bewails his fate that Macedonia ſhall dwindle with his death. All the Macedonians ſay it were better to die with him.

The grief of the Macedonians.

¹ Three lines with red capital A, and ſmaller a in the margin beſide.

² Four lines with red capital A, and ſmall a in the margin beſide.

Alexander
sends rich
gifts to the
Temple of
Apollo in
Athens and
makes
order for
the em-
balming of
his body.

* Leaf 49.

His death.

The
funeral of
Alexander.

His burial
and
wonderful
tomb.

The de-
scription of
Alexander.

The years
of his life
and his
warlike
deeds.

pay, 'þou ledd' vs in-to Perse, Arraby, and Inde, and vn-to the
werlde; ende, and in-to what cuntrce þat þe liste wende; why,
lorde, fleez þou now fra vs? Lede vs wit the whedir so þou gase.'
það kyng Alexander sent to þe templee of Appollo in 4
Athenes many richie iowels, and on þe same wyse tiff all oper
temples. And það he commanded þat when he ware dede, þay
schulde enoynte his body and embawme it wit riche oynementes,
þe whilke kepis menes bodys in graues wit-owtten corrupcioun. 8
það he badde Tholomeus þat he scholde [take] a ẽ besantes of
golde, & þare-off gere make hym a tombe in Alexander. And
onane * as he had commanded hym þus, one-seeand það all, he
swelt. And það his prynces lifte vp his body, and did' apou his 12
clethyng of astate and putt a riche coron on his heued; and
sett hym in þe emperours chayer, þe whilke twelue prynces
drewe wit þaire brestes fra Babiloyne tiff Alexander. Tholo-
meus went alway bi-fore þe chayere wepande & sayande one þis 16
wyse: 'Fult waa es me, My lord' Alexander, waa es me. For in
all thi lyfe slew þou neuer so many men as þou dose nowe after
þi dede.' All Alexanders knyghtis also weped' & made grete
dole & sayde on þis wyse: 'Waa es vs wrechis! whatt schaff wee 20
now do after þe dede of oure lorde Alexander? Whedir schaff we
now gaa or whate partye may we now chese? Whare schaff
we now get any helpe tiff oure lyfelade?' One þis wyse þay
went wepand' after Alexander, tiff þay come tiff þe citee of 24
Alexander. And þare þay beryed' hym in a toumbe þat was
rijte hye and wonder curiouslye wroghte. Þis tombe was all
of fyne golde sett full of precyous stanes, and on þat toumbe
þer was sett xxx ymages of golde wonder craftily made. 28

¹ Alexander was a man bot of a comon stature, wit a lange
neckke, Faire eghne & glad; his chekes ruddy, and all þe reme-
nant of his lymmes ware faire & semely & lyke vn-tiff a lorde.
He ouercome all men & neuer was ouercomen. The lenthe 32
of his lyffe was xxxij zere, twa & thritty zere & seuē monethes.
Fra þe twentyd zere of his birthe he gaffe hym to werre, and in
twelue zere he conquered all þe werlde, and made subiect un-tiff
hym alkynd nacyons. Seuē monethes he ristede hym. He was 36
borne on þe vij kl of January, and dyed on þe vij kl of August.

¹ Large red capital A.

He byggid also in his lyfe xij grete citeez þat hider-to-wardez þe twelve
 bene enhabyt, and þis are þaire names. Firste *Alexander* þat great cities
 es called yprysilicas, þe secund *Alexander* es called *Bepyporum*, that he
 4 þe thrid *Alexander* es callede *Sithia*, þe ferthe *Alexander* es
 called *Bicontristi*, þe fifte *Alexander* es called *Peraucton*, þe sext
Alexander es called *Buctiphalon*, þe seuent es called vnder þe
 ryuer of Tygre, þe aghtend New Babiloyne, þe nyend *Aptreadam*,
 8 þe tend *Messagetes*, þe elleuend *Ypsyacon*, þe twelfed es called
Egipt.

Explicit vita Alexandry magni conquestoris.

Here endeþ þe lyf of gret *Alexander conquerour* of all þe
 12 worlde.



Early English Text Society.

LONDON :

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,

BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.,

BROADWAY HOUSE, LUDGATE HILL, E.C.

AND BY HUMPHREY MILFORD, OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS,

AMEN CORNER, E.C., AND IN NEW YORK.

Early English Text Society.

Committee of Management:

Director: PROF. I. GOLLANCZ, Litt.D.; KING'S COLLEGE, LONDON, W.C.

Assistant Director: JOHN MUNRO, Esq.

Treasurer: HENRY B. WHEATLEY, Esq.

Hon. Sec.: W. A. DALZIEL, Esq., 67, VICTORIA ROAD, FINSBURY PARK, N.

Hon. Secs. { North & East: Prof. G. L. KITTREDGE, Harvard Coll., Cambr., Mass.
for America: { South & West: Prof. J. W. BRIGHT, Johns Hopkins Univ., Baltimore.

HENRY BRADLEY, M.A., Ph.D.

PROF. NAPIER, Ph.D.

REV. DR. ANDREW CLARK, M.A.

ALFRED W. POLLARD, M.A.

PROF. W. P. KER, LL.D.

PROF. J. SCHICK, Ph.D.

SIR SIDNEY L. LEE, Litt.D.

ROBERT STEELE, Esq.

HENRY LITTLEHALES, Esq.

SIR GEORGE F. WARNER.

SIR J. A. H. MURRAY, Litt.D.

DR. W. ALDIS WRIGHT.

(With power to add Workers to their number.)

Bankers:

THE UNION OF LONDON AND SMITHS BANK, 2, PRINCES STREET, E.C.

THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY was started by the late DR. FURNIVALL in 1864 for the purpose of bringing the mass of Old English Literature within the reach of the ordinary student, and of wiping away the reproach under which England had long rested, of having felt little interest in the monuments of her early language and life.

On the starting of the Society, so many Texts of importance were at once taken in hand by its Editors, that it became necessary in 1867 to open, besides the *Original Series* with which the Society began, an *Extra Series* which should be mainly devoted to fresh editions of all that is most valuable in printed MSS. and Caxton's and other black-letter books, though first editions of MSS. will not be excluded when the convenience of issuing them demands their inclusion in the Extra Series.

During the forty-eight years of the Society's existence, it has produced, with whatever shortcomings, and at a cost of over £30,000, an amount of good solid work for which all students of our Language, and some of our Literature, must be grateful, and which has rendered possible the beginnings (at least) of proper Histories and Dictionaries of that Language and Literature, and has illustrated the thoughts, the life, the manners and customs of our forefathers and foremothers.

But the Society's experience has shown the very small number of those inheritors of the speech of Cynewulf, Chaucer, and Shakspeare, who care two guineas a year for the records of that speech. 'Let the dead past bury its dead' is still the cry of Great Britain and her Colonies, and of America, in the matter of language. The Society has never had money enough to produce the Texts that could easily have been got ready for it; and many Editors are now anxious to send to press the work they have prepared. The necessity has therefore arisen for trying to increase the number of the Society's members, and to induce its well-wishers to help it by gifts of money, either in one sum or by instalments. The Committee trust that every Member will bring before his or her friends and acquaintances the Society's claims for liberal support. Until all Early English MSS. are printed, no proper History of our Language or Social Life is possible.

The Subscription to the Society, which constitutes membership, is £1 1s. a year for the ORIGINAL SERIES, and £1 1s. for the EXTRA SERIES, due in advance on the 1st of JANUARY, and should be paid by Cheque, Postal Order, or Money-Order, crossed 'Union of London and Smiths Bank,' to the Hon. Secretary, W. A. DALZIEL, Esq., 67, Victoria Road, Finsbury Park, London, N. Members who want their Texts posted to them must add to their prepaid Subscriptions 1s. for the Original Series, and 1s. for the Extra Series, yearly. The Society's Texts are also sold separately at the prices put after them in the Lists; but Members can get back-Texts at one-third less than the List-prices by sending the cash for them in advance to the Hon. Secretary.

☛ The Society intends to complete, as soon as its funds will allow, the Reprints of its out-of-print Texts of the year 1866, and also of nos. 20, 26, and 33. Dr. Otto Glauning has undertaken *Seinte Marherete*; and *Itali Meidenhad* is in type. As the cost of these Reprints, if they were not needed, would have been devoted to fresh Texts, the Reprints will be sent to all Members in lieu of such Texts. Though called 'Reprints,' these books are new editions, generally with valuable additions, a fact not notised by a few careless receivers of them, who have complained that they already had the volumes.

A gratifying gift is to be made to the Society. The American owner of the unique MS. of the Works of John Metham—whose Romance of Amoryus and Cleopas was sketched by Dr. Furnivall in his new edition of *Political, Religious and Love Poems*, No. 15 in the Society's Original Series—has promised to give the Society an edition of his MS. prepared by Dr. Hardin Craig of Princeton, and it will be issued next year as No. 132 of the Original Series. The giver hopes that his example may be followed by other folk, as the support hitherto given to the Society is so far below that which it deserves.

The Original Series Texts for 1910 were No. 139, *John Arderne's Treatises on Fistula in Ano*, &c., edited by D'Arcy Power, M.D., englisht about 1425 from the Latin of about 1380 A.D.; No. 140, *Cupgrave's Lives of St. Augustine and St. Gilbert of Sempringham*, A.D. 1451, edited by John Munro.

The Original Series Texts for 1911 were, No. 141, *Earth upon Earth*, all the known texts, edited by Miss Hilda Murray, M.A.; No. 142, *The English Register of Godstow Nunnery*, Part III, containing Forewords, Grammar Notes and Indexes, edited by Dr. Andrew Clark; and No. 143, *The Wars of Alexander*, edited from the Thornton MS. by J. S. Westlake, M.A. (still at press).

The Original Series Texts for 1912 were, No. 144, *The English Register of Oseney Abbey, by Oxford*, Part II, containing Forewords, Grammar, Notes and Indexes, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark, and No. 145, *The Northern Passion*, Part I, containing the four parallel texts of the poem, with variants from other manuscripts, edited by Miss Frances A. Foster.

Mr. John Munro has at press a revised and enlarged edition of Original Series, No. 26, the shorter pieces from the Thornton Manuscript, originally edited by the Rev. G. G. Perry, and this will be sent out to all subscribers to the Original Series for 1913. A revised edition of Dr. MacCracken's *Minor Poems of Lydgate*, Part I, will be issued to subscribers of 1910.

The Texts for future years will be chosen from Part III of *The Brut*; Part III of the *Alphabet of Tales*, edited by Mrs. M. M. Banks; Part II of Mr. A. O. Belfour's *Twelfth Century Homilies*; and Part IV of Miss Dormer Harris's *Coventry Lect Book*. Later Texts will be Part III of Robert of Brunne's *Handlyng Synne*, with a Glossary of Wm. of Wadlington's French words in his *Manuel des Pechiez*, and comments on them, by Mr. Dickson Brown; Part II of the *Exeter Book*—Anglo-Saxon Poems from the unique MS. in Exeter Cathedral—re-edited by Professor Gollancz; Part II of Prof. Dr. Holthausen's *Vices and Virtues*; Part II of *Jacob's Well*, edited by Dr. Brandeis; the Alliterative *Siege of Jerusalem*, edited by the late Prof. Dr. E. Kolbing and Prof. Dr. Kaluza; an Introduction and Glossary to the *Minor Poems of the Vernon MS.* by H. Hartley, M.A.; Alain Chartier's *Quadrilogue*, edited from the unique MS. Univ. Coll. Oxford No. 85, by Prof. J. W. H. Atkins; and the *Early Verse and Prose* in the Harleian MS. 2253, re-edited by Miss Hilda Murray. Canon Wordsworth of Marlborough having given the Society a copy of the *Leofric Canonical Rule*, Latin and Anglo-Saxon, Parker MS. 191, C. C. C. Cambridge, Prof. Napier will edit it, with a fragment of the englisht *Capitula* of Bp. Theodulf: it is now at press.

The Extra Series Texts for 1910 were No. CVI, *Lydgate's Troy Book*, Part III, containing Books IV and V, completing the text, edited by Hy. Bergen, Ph.D.; and No. CVII, *Lydgate's Minor Poems*, Part I, *Religious Poems*, with the Lydgate Canon, edited by H. N. MacCracken, Ph.D.

The Extra Series Texts for 1911 were, No. CVIII, *Lydgate's Siege of Thebes*, Part I, the text, edited from the MSS. by Dr. A. Erdmann; and No. CIX, *Partmope*, Part I, edited from its 3 MSS. by Dr. A. T. Böttker.

The Extra Series Texts for 1912 were, No. CX, *Carleton's Mirrour of the World*, edited with reproductions of all the woodcuts, by Dr. O. H. Prior, M.A., and No. CXI, *Carleton's History of Jason*, Part I, the text, edited by Mr. John Munro (both at press).

Future Extra Series Texts will be *Lydgate's Minor Poems*, Part II, *Secular Poems*, ed. by Dr. H. N. MacCracken; *Lydgate's Troy Book*, Part IV, edited by Dr. Hy. Bergen; *Dr. Medicina*, re-edited by Prof. Delcourt; *Lovelich's Romance of Merlin*, re-edited by Prof. E. A. Kock, Part II; Miss Eleanor Plummer's re-edition of *Sir Gower and Sir Percyvalle*; Miss K. B. Locock's re-edition of *Hylton's Ladder of Perfection*; Miss Warren's two-text

edition of *The Dunce of Death* from the Ellesmere and other MS.; *The Owl and Nightingale*, two parallel Texts, edited by Mr. G. F. H. Sykes; Dr. Erbe's re-edition of *Mirk's Festial*, Part II; Dr. M. Konrath's re-edition of *William of Shoreham's Poems*, Part II; Professor Gollancz's re-edition of two Alliterative Poems, *Winner and Waster*, &c.; about 1360; Dr. Norman Moore's re-edition of *The Book of the Foundation of St. Bartholomew's Hospital, London*, from the unique MS. about 1425, which gives an account of the Founder, Rahere, and the miraculous cures wrought at the Hospital; *The Craft of Nombrynge*, with other of the earliest english Treatises on Arithmetic, edited by R. Steele, B.A.; and the Second Part of the prose Romance of *Melusine*—Introduction, with ten facsimiles of the best woodblocks of the old foreign black-letter editions, Glossary, &c., by A. K. Donald, B.A.

Later Texts for the Extra Series will include *The Three Kings' Sons*, Part II, the Introduction, &c., by Prof. Dr. Leon Kellner; Part II of *The Chester Plays*, re-edited from the MSS., with a full collation of the formerly missing Devonshire MS., by Mr. G. England and Dr. Matthews; Prof. Jespersen's editions of John Hart's *Orthographie* (MS. 1551 A.D.; black-letter 1569), and *Method to teach Reading*, 1570; Deguileville's *Pilgrimage of the Soule*, in English prose, edited by Mr. Hans Koestner. (For the three prose versions of *The Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*—two English, one French—an Editor is wanted.) Members are asked to realise the fact that the Society has now 50 years' work on its Lists,—at its present rate of production,—and that there is from 100 to 200 more years' work to come after that. The year 2000 will not see finished all the Texts that the Society ought to print. The need of more Members and money is pressing. Offers of help from willing Editors have continually to be declined because the Society has no funds to print their Texts.

Before his death in 1895, Mr. G. N. Currie was preparing an edition of the 15th and 16th century Prose Versions of Guillaume de Deguileville's *Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*, with the French prose version by Jean Gallopes, from Lord Aldenham's MS., he having generously promised to pay the extra cost of printing the French text, and engraving one or two of the illuminations in his MS. But Mr. Currie, when on his deathbed, charged a friend to burn all his MSS. which lay in a corner of his room, and unluckily all the E. E. T. S.'s copies of the Deguileville prose versions were with them, and were burnt with them, so that the Society will be put to the cost of fresh copies.

Guillaume de Deguileville, monk of the Cistercian abbey of Chaalis, in the diocese of Senlis, wrote his first verse *Pèlerinage de l'Homme* in 1330-1 when he was 36.¹ Twenty-five (or six) years after, in 1355, he revised his poem, and issued a second version of it,² a revision of which was printed ab. 1500. Of the prose representative of the first version, 1330-1, a prose Englishing, about 1430 A.D., was edited by Mr. Aldis Wright for the Roxburghe Club in 1869, from MS. Ff. 5. 30 in the Cambridge University Library. Other copies of this prose English are in the Hunterian Museum, Glasgow, Q. 2. 25; Sion College, London; and the Laud Collection in the Bodleian, no. 740.³ A copy in the Northern dialect is MS. G. 21, in St. John's Coll., Cambridge, and this is the MS. which will be edited for the E. E. Text Society. The Laud MS. 740 was somewhat condense and modernised, in the 17th century, into MS. Ff. 6. 30, in the Cambridge University Library.⁴ "The Pilgrime or the Pilgrimage of Man in this World," copied by Will. Baspoole, whose copy "was verbatim written by Walter Parker, 1645, and from thence transcribed by G. G. 1649; and from thence by W. A. 1655." This last copy may have been read by, or its story reported to, Bunyan, and may have been the groundwork of his *Pilgrim's Progress*. It will be edited for the E. E. T. Soc., its text running under the earlier English, as in Mr. Herrtage's edition of the *Gesta Romanorum* for the Society. In February 1464,⁵ Jean Gallopes—a clerk of Angers, afterwards chaplain to John, Duke of Bedford, Regent of France—turned Deguileville's first verse *Pèlerinage* into a prose *Pèlerinage de la vie humaine*.⁶ By the kindness of Lord Aldenham, as above mentioned, Gallopes's French text will be printed opposite the early prose northern Englishing in the Society's edition.

The Second Version of Deguileville's *Pèlerinage de l'Homme*, A.D. 1355 or -6, was englished in verse by Lydgate in 1426, and, thanks to the diligence of the old Elizabethan tailor and manuscript-lover, John Stowe, a complete text of Lydgate's poem has been edited for the Society by Dr. Furnivall. The British Museum French MSS. (Harleian 4399,⁷ and Additional 22,937⁸ and 25,594⁹) are all of the First Version.

¹ He was born about 1295. See Abbé GOUJER's *Bibliothèque française*, Vol. IX, p. 73-4.—P. M. The Roxburghe Club printed the 1st version in 1893.

² The Roxburghe Club's copy of this 2nd version was lent to Mr. Currie, and unluckily burnt too with his other MSS.

³ These 3 MSS. have not yet been collated, but are believed to be all of the same version.

⁴ Another MS. is in the Pepys Library.

⁵ According to Lord Aldenham's MS.

⁶ These were printed in France, late in the 15th or early in the 16th century.

⁷ 15th cent., containing only the *Vie humaine*.

⁸ 15th cent., containing all the 3 Pilgrimages, the 3rd being *Jesus Christ's*.

⁹ 14th cent., containing the *Vie humaine* and the 2nd Pilgrimage, *de l'Âme*: both incomplete.

Besides his first *Pèlerinage de l'homme* in its two versions, Deguilleville wrote a second, "de l'ame separee du corps," and a third, "de nostre seigneur Iesus." Of the second, a prose Englishing of 1413, *The Pilgrimage of the Soule* (with poems, by Hoccleve, already printed for the Society with that author's *Regement of Princes*), exists in the Egerton MS. 615,¹ at Hatfield, Cambridge (Univ. Kk. 1. 7, and Caius), Oxford (Univ. Coll. and Corpus), and in Caxton's edition of 1483. This version has 'somewhat of addicions' as Caxton says, and some shortenings too, as the maker of both, the first translator, tells us in the MSS. Caxton leaves out the earlier englisher's interesting Epilogue in the Egerton MS. This prose englishing of the *Soule* has been copied and will be edited for the Society by Mr. Hans Koestner. Of the *Pilgrimage* of Jesus, no englishing is known.

Members are reminded that *fresh Subscribers are always wanted*, and that the Committee can at any time, on short notice, send to press an additional Thousand Pounds' worth of work.

The Subscribers to the Original Series must be prepared for the issue of the whole of the Early English *Lives of Saints*, sooner or later. The Standard Collection of Saints' Lives in the Corpus and Ashmole MSS., the Harleian MS. 2277, &c. will repeat the Laud set, our No. 87, with additions, and in right order. (The foundation MS. (Laud 108) had to be printed first, to prevent quite unwieldy collations.) The Supplementary Lives from the Vernon and other MSS. will form one or two separate volumes.

Besides the Saints' Lives, Trevisa's englishing of *Bartholomæus de Proprietatibus Rerum*, the mediæval Cyclopædia of Science, &c., will be the Society's next big undertaking. Prof. Napier of Oxford, wishing to have the whole of our MS. Anglo-Saxon in type, and accessible to students, will edit for the Society all the unprinted and other Anglo-Saxon Homilies which are not included in Thorpe's edition of Ælfric's prose,² Dr. Morris's of the Blickling Homilies, and Prof. Skeat's of Ælfric's Metrical Homilies. The late Prof. Kölbing left complete his text, for the Society, of the *Ancien Riwele*, from the best MS., with collations of the other four, and this will be edited for the Society by Dr. Thümmler. Mr. Harvey means to prepare an edition of the three MSS. of the *Earliest English Metrical Psalter*, one of which was edited by the late Mr. Stevenson for the Surtees Society.

Members of the Society will learn with pleasure that its example has been followed, not only by the Old French Text Society, which has done such admirable work under its founders Profs. Paul Meyer and Gaston Paris, but also by the Early Russian Text Society, which was set on foot in 1877, and has since issued many excellent editions of old MS. Chronicles, &c.

Members will also note with pleasure the annexation of large tracts of our Early English territory by the important German contingent, the late Professors Zupitza and Kölbing, the living Hansknecht. Einkenel, Haenisch, Kaluza, Hupe, Adam, Holthausen, Schick, Herzfeld, Brandeis, Sieper, Konrath, Wülfing, &c. Scandinavia has also sent us Prof. Erdmann and Dr. E. A. Kock; Holland, Prof. H. Logeman, who is now working in Belgium; France, Prof. Paul Meyer—with Gaston Paris as adviser (alas, now dead);—Italy, Prof. Lattanzi; Austria, Dr. von Fleischhacker; while America is represented by the late Prof. Child, by Dr. Mary Noyes Colvin, Miss Rickert, Profs. Mead, McKnight, Triggs, Hulme, Bryce, Craig, Drs. Bergen, MacCracken, &c. The sympathy, the ready help, which the Society's work has cald forth from the Continent and the United States, have been among the pleasantest experiences of the Society's life, a real aid and cheer amid all troubles and discouragements. All our Members are grateful for it, and recognise that the bond their work has woven between them and the lovers of language and antiquity across the seas is one of the most welcome results of the Society's efforts.

ORIGINAL SERIES. (One guinea each year.)

- | | | |
|---|---------|------|
| 1. Early English Alliterative Poems, ab. 1360 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. | 16s. | 1864 |
| 2. Arthur, ab. 1440, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. | 4s. | " |
| 3. Lauder on the Dewtie of Kyngis, &c., 1556, ed. F. Hall, D.C.L. | 4s. | " |
| 4. Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight, ab. 1360, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. | 10s. | " |
| 5. Hume's Orthographie and Congruitie of the Britan Tongue, ab. 1617, ed. H. B. Wheatley. | 4s. | 1865 |
| 6. Lancelot of the Laik, ab. 1500, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. | 8s. | " |
| 7. Genesis & Exodus, ab. 1250, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. | 8s. | " |
| 8. Morte Arthure, ab. 1440, ed. E. Brock. | 7s. | " |
| 9. Thynne on Speght's ed. of Chaucer, A.D. 1590, ed. Dr. G. Kingsley and Dr. F. J. Furnivall. | 10s. | " |
| 10. Merlin, ab. 1440, Part I., ed. H. B. Wheatley. | 2s. 6d. | " |
| 11. Lyndesay's Monarchie, &c., 1552, Part I., ed. J. Small, M.A. | 3s. | " |

¹ Ab. 1430, 106 leaves (leaf 1 of text wanting), with illuminations of nice little devils—red, green, tawny, &c.—and damned souls, fires, angels, &c.

² Of these, Mr. Harsley is preparing a new edition, with collations of all the MSS. Many copies of Thorpe's book, not issued by the Ælfric Society, are still in stock.

Of the Verell Homilies, the Society has bought the copy made by Prof. G. Lattanzi.

12. Wright's Chaste Wife, ab. 1462, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 1s. 1865
13. Seinte Marherete, 1200-1330, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne; re-edited by Dr. Otto Glauning. [Out of print. 1866
14. Kyng Horn, Floris and Blanchefleur, &c., ed. Rev. J. R. Lumby, D.D., re-ed. Dr. G. H. McKnight. 5s. ..
15. Political, Religious, and Love Poems, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 7s. 6d. ..
16. The Book of Quinte Essence, ab. 1460-70, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 1s. ..
17. Parallel Extracts from 45 MSS. of Piers the Plowman, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 1s. ..
18. Hali Meidenhad, ab. 1200, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne, re-edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. [At Press. ..
19. Lyndesay's Monarchie, &c., Part II., ed. J. Small, M.A. 3s. 6d. ..
20. Richard Rolle de Hampole, English Prose Treatises of, ed. Rev. G. G. Perry. 1s. [At Press. ..
21. Merlin, Part II., ed. H. B. Wheatley. 4s. ..
22. Partenay or Lusignen, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s. ..
23. Dan Michel's Ayenbite of Inwyrt, 1340, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. 6d. ..
24. Hymns to the Virgin and Christ; the Parliament of Devils, &c., ab. 1430, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 8s. 1867
25. The Stacions of Rome, the Pilgrims' Sea-voyage, with Clene Maydenhod, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 1s. ..
26. Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse, from R. Thornton's MS., ed. Rev. G. G. Perry. 2s. [At Press. ..
27. Levine's Manipulus Vocabulorum, a ryming Dictionary, 1570, ed. H. B. Wheatley. 12s. ..
28. William's Vision of Piers the Plowman, 1362 A.D.; Text A, Part I., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s. ..
29. Old English Homilies (ab. 1220-30 A.D.). Series I, Part I. Edited by Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 7s. ..
30. Pierce the Ploughmans Crede, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 2s. ..
31. Myro's Duties of a Parish Priest, in Verse, ab. 1420 A.D., ed. E. Peacock. 4s. 1868
32. Early English Meals and Manners: the Boke of Nourture of John Russell, the Bokes of Keruyngne, Curtasye, and Demeanor, the Babees Book, Urbanitatis, &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall. 12s. ..
33. The Knight de la Tour Landry, ab. 1440 A.D. A Book for Daughters, ed. T. Wright, M.A. [Reprinting. ..
34. Old English Homilies (before 1300 A.D.). Series I, Part II., ed. R. Morris, LL.D. 8s. ..
35. Lyndesay's Works, Part III.: The Historie and Testament of Squyer Meldrum, ed. F. Hall. 2s. ..
36. Merlin, Part III. Ed. H. B. Wheatley. On Arthurian Localities, by J. S. Stuart Glennie. 12s. 1869
37. Sir David Lyndesay's Works, Part IV., Ane Satyre of the Three Estaitis. Ed. F. Hall, D.C.L. 4s. ..
38. William's Vision of Piers the Plowman, Part II. Text B. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 10s. 6d. ..
39. Alliterative Romance of the Destruction of Troy. Ed. D. Donaldson & G. A. Panton. Pt. I. 10s. 6d. ..
40. English Gilds, their Statutes and Customs, 1389 A.D. Edit. Toulmin Smith and Lucy T. Smith, with an Essay on Gilds and Trades-Unions, by Dr. L. Brentano. 21s. 1870
41. William Lauder's Minor Poems. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 3s. ..
42. Bernardus De Cura Rei Familiaris, Early Scottish Prophecies, &c. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 2s. ..
43. Ratis Raving, and other Moral and Religious Pieces. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 8s. ..
44. The Alliterative Romance of Joseph of Arimathe, or The Holy Grail: from the Vernon MS.; with W. de Worde's and Pynson's Lives of Joseph: ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 5s. 1871
45. King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care, edited from 2 MSS., with an English translation, by Henry Sweet, Esq., B.A., Balliol College, Oxford. Part I. 10s. ..
46. Legends of the Holy Rood, Symbols of the Passion and Cross Poems, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. ..
47. Sir David Lyndesay's Works, Part V., ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 3s. ..
48. The Times' Whistle, and other Poems, by R. C., 1616; ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6s. ..
49. An Old English Miscellany, containing a Bestiary, Kentish Sermons, Proverbs of Alfred, and Religious Poems of the 13th cent., ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. 10s. 1872
50. King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. Part II. 10s. ..
51. The Life of St Juliana, 2 versions, A.D. 1230, with translations; ed. T. O. Cockayne & E. Brock. 2s. ..
52. Palladius on Husbandrie, english (ab. 1420 A.D.), ed. Rev. Barton Lodge, M.A. Part I. 10s. ..
53. Old-English Homilies, Series II., and three Hymns to the Virgin and God, 13th-century, with the music to two of them, in old and modern notation; ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. 8s. 1873
54. The Vision of Piers Plowman, Text C: Richard the Redeles (by William, the author of the Vision) and The Crowned King: Part III., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 18s. ..
55. Generydes, a Romance, ab. 1440 A.D., ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part I. 3s. ..
56. The Gest Hystoriale of the Destruction of Troy, in alliterative verse; ed. by D. Donaldson, Esq., and the late Rev. G. A. Panton. Part II. 10s. 6d. 1874
57. The Early English Version of the "Cursor Mundi"; in four Texts, edited by the Rev. R. Morris, M.A., LL.D. Part I, with 2 photolithographic facsimiles. 10s. 6d. ..
58. The Blickling Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. Part I. 8s. ..
59. The "Cursor Mundi" in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris Part II. 15s. 1875
60. Meditacyuns on the Soper of our Lorde (by Robert of Brunne), edited by J. M. Cowper. 2s. 6d. ..
61. The Romance and Prophecies of Thomas of Erceeldoune, from 5 MSS.; ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 10s. 6d. ..
62. The "Cursor Mundi," in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III. 15s. 1876
63. The Blickling Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II. 7s. ..
64. Francis Thynne's Embleames and Epigrams, A.D. 1600, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 7s. ..
65. Be Domes Dæge (Bede's De Die Judicii), &c., ed. J. R. Lumby, B.D. 2s. ..
66. The "Cursor Mundi," in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part IV., with 2 autotypes. 10s. 1877
67. Notes on Piers Plowman, by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. Part I. 21s. ..
68. The "Cursor Mundi," in 4 Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part V. 25s. 1878
69. Adam Davie's 5 Dreams about Edward II., &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 5s. ..
70. Generydes, a Romance, ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part II. 4s. ..
71. The Lay Folks Mass-Book, four texts, ed. Rev. Canon Simmons. 25s. 1879

72. Palladius on Husbandrie, enlight (ab. 1420 A.D.). Part II. Ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A. 15s. 1879
73. The Blickling Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III. 10s. 1880
74. English Works of Wyclif, hitherto unprinted, ed. F. D. Matthew, Esq. 20s. "
75. Catholicism Anglium, an early English Dictionary, from Lord Monson's MS. A.D. 1483, ed., with Introduction & Notes, by S. J. Herrtage, B.A.; and with a Preface by H. B. Wheatley. 20s. 1881
76. Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, in MS. Cott. Jul. E 7., ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A. Part I. 10s. "
77. Beowulf, the unique MS. autotyped and transliterated, edited by Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D. 25s. 1882
78. The Fifty Earliest English Wills, in the Court of Probate, 1387-1439, ed. by F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 7s. "
79. King Alfred's Orosius, from Lord Tollenache's 9th century MS., Part I, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 13s. 1883
- 79b. *Extra Volume.* Facsimile of the Epinal Glossary, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 15s. "
80. The Early-English Life of St. Katherine and its Latin Original, ed. Dr. Eichenkel. 12s. 1884
81. Piers Plowman: Notes, Glossary, &c. Part IV, completing the work, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A. 18s. "
82. Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7., ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A., LL.D. Part II. 12s. 1885
83. The Oldest English Texts, Charters, &c., ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 20s. "
84. Additional Analogs to 'The Wright's Chaste Wife,' No. 12, by W. A. Clouston. 1s. 1886
85. The Three Kings of Cologne. 2 English Texts, and 1 Latin, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 17s. "
86. Prose Lives of Women Saints, ab. 1610 A.D., ed. from the unique MS. by Dr. C. Horstmann. 12s. "
87. Early English Verse Lives of Saints (earliest version), Laud MS. 108, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 20s. 1887
88. Hy. Bradshaw's Life of St. Werburgh (Pynson, 1521), ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 10s. "
89. Vices and Virtues, from the unique MS., ab. 1200 A.D., ed. Dr. F. Holthausen. Part I. 8s. 1888
90. Anglo-Saxon and Latin Rule of St. Benet, interlinear Glosses, ed. Dr. H. Logemann. 12s. "
91. Two Fifteenth-Century Cookery-Books, ab. 1430-1450, edited by Mr. T. Austin. 10s. "
92. Eadwine's Canterbury Psalter, from the Trin. Cambr. MS., ab. 1150 A.D., ed. F. Harsley, B.A. Pt. I. 12s. 1889
93. Defensor's Liber Scintillarum, edited from the MSS. by Ernest Rhodes, B.A. 12s. "
94. Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7, Part III., ed. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 15s. 1890
95. The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History, re-ed. by Dr. Thomas Miller. Part I, § 1. 18s. "
96. The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History, re-ed. by Dr. Thomas Miller. Pt. I, § 2. 15s. 1891
97. The Earliest English Prose Psalter, edited from its 2 MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buehling. Part I. 15s. "
98. Minor Poems of the Vernon MS., Part I, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 20s. 1892
99. Cursor Mundi. Part VI. Preface, Notes, and Glossary, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. "
100. Capgrave's Life of St. Katharine, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann, with Forewords by Dr. Furnivall. 20s. 1893
101. Cursor Mundi. Part VII. Essay on the MSS., their Dialects, &c., by Dr. H. Hupe. 10s. "
102. Lanfranc's Chirurgie, ab. 1400 A.D., ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker. Part I. 20s. 1894
103. The Legend of the Cross, from a 12th century MS., &c., ed. Prof. A. S. Napier, M.A., Ph.D. 7s. 6d. "
104. The Exeter Book (Anglo-Saxon Poems), re-edited from the unique MS. by I. Gollancz, M.A. Part I. 20s. 1895
105. The Prymer or Lay-Folks' Prayer-Book, Camb. Univ. MS., ab. 1420, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part I. 10s. "
106. R. Misy's Fire of Love and Mending of Life (Hampole), 1434, 1435, ed. Rev. R. Harvey, M.A. 15s. 1896
107. The English Conquest of Ireland. A.D. 1166-1185, 2 Texts, 1425, 1440, Pt. I, ed. Dr. Furnivall. 15s. "
108. Child-Marriages and -Divorces, Trothplights, &c. Chester Depositions, 1561-6, ed. Dr. Furnivall. 15s. 1897
109. The Prymer or Lay-Folks' Prayer-Book, ab. 1420, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part II. 10s. "
110. The Old-English Version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History, ed. Dr. T. Miller. Part II, § 1. 15s. 1898
111. The Old-English Version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History, ed. Dr. T. Miller. Part II, § 2. 15s. "
112. Merlin, Part IV: Outlines of the Legend of Merlin, by Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph.D. 15s. 1899
113. Queen Elizabeth's Englishings of Boethius, Plutarch &c. &c., ed. Miss C. Pemberton. 15s. "
114. Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, Part IV and last, ed. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 10s. 1900
115. Jacob's Well, edited from the unique Salisbury Cathedral MS. by Dr. A. Brandeis. Part I. 10s. "
116. An Old-English Martyrology, re-edited by Dr. G. Herzfeld. 10s. "
117. Minor Poems of the Vernon MS., edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Part II. 15s. 1901
118. The Lay Folks' Catechism, ed. by Canon Simmons and Rev. H. E. Nolloth, M.A. 5s. "
119. Robert of Brunne's Handlyng Synne (1303), and its French original, re-ed. by Dr. Furnivall. Pt. I. 10s. "
120. The Rule of St. Benet, in Northern Prose and Verse, & Caxton's Summary, ed. Dr. E. A. Kock. 15s. 1902
121. The Laud MS. Troy-Book, ed. from the unique Laud MS. 595, by Dr. J. E. Wülfing. Part I. 15s. "
122. The Laud MS. Troy-Book, ed. from the unique Laud MS. 595, by Dr. J. E. Wülfing. Part II. 20s. 1903
123. Robert of Brunne's Handlyng Synne (1303), and its French original, re-ed. by Dr. Furnivall. Pt. II. 10s. "
124. Twenty-six Political and other Poems from Digby MS. 102 &c., ed. by Dr. J. Kail. Part I. 10s. 1904
125. Medieval Records of a London City Church, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part I. 10s. "
126. An Alphabet of Tales, in Northern English, from the Latin, ed. Mrs. M. M. Banks. Part I. 10s. "
127. An Alphabet of Tales, in Northern English, from the Latin, ed. Mrs. M. M. Banks. Part II. 10s. 1905
128. Medieval Records of a London City Church, ed. Henry Littlehales. Part II. 10s. "
129. The English Register of Godstow Nunnery, ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Pt. I. 10s. "
130. The English Register of Godstow Nunnery, ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. Dr. A. Clark. Pt. II. 15s. 1906
131. The Brut, or The Chronicle of England, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. F. Brie. Part I. 10s. "
132. John Metham's Works, edited from the unique MS. by Dr. Hardin Craig. [At Press.] "
133. The English Register of Osney Abbey, by Oxford, ed. by the Rev. Dr. A. Clark. Part I. 15s. 1907
134. The Coventry Leet Book, edited from the unique MS. by Miss M. Dormer Harris. Part I. 15s. "
135. The Coventry Leet Book, edited from the unique MS. by Miss M. Dormer Harris. Part II. 15s. 1908
- 135b. *Extra Issue.* Prof. Manly's Piers Plowman & its Sequence, urging the fivefold authorship of the Vision. "
136. The Brut, or The Chronicle of England, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. F. Brie. Part II. 15s. "

137. Twelfth-Century Homilies in MS. Bodley 343, ed. by Prof. A. O. Belfour, M.A. Part I, the Text. 15s. 1909
 138. The Coventry Leet Book, edited from the unique MS. by Miss M. Dormer Harris. Part III. 15s. "
 139. John Arderne's Treatises on Fistula in Ano, &c., ed. by D'Arcy Power, M.D. 15s. 1910
 139 *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*, *Extra Issue*. The Piers Plowman Controversy; *b*. Dr. Jusserand's 1st Reply to Prof. Manly; *c*. Prof. Manly's Answer to Dr. Jusserand; *d*. Dr. Jusserand's 2nd Reply to Prof. Manly; *e*. Mr. R. W. Chambers's Article; *f*. Dr. Henry Bradley's Rejoinder to Mr. R. W. Chambers (issued separately). 10s. "
 140. Capgrave's Lives of St. Augustine and St. Gilbert of Sempringham, A.D. 1451, ed. by J. J. Munro. 10s. "
 141. Earth upon Earth, all the known texts, ed., with an Introduction, by Miss Hilda Murray, M.A. 10s. 1911
 142. The English Register of Godstow Nunnery, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Part III. 10s. "
 143. The Wars of Alexander the Great, Thornton MS., ed. J. S. Westlake, M.A. [At Press.] 10s. "
 144. The English Register of Osney Abbey, by Oxford, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Part II. 10s. 1912
 145. The Northern Passion, ed. by Miss F. A. Foster. Part I, the four parallel texts. 15s. "
 146. The Coventry Leet Book, ed. Miss M. Dormer Harris. Introduction, Indexes, etc. Part IV. [At Press.] 1913
 147. The Northern Passion, ed. Miss F. A. Foster, Introduction, French Text, Variants and Fragments, Glossary. Part II. [At Press.] "

EXTRA SERIES. (One guinea each year.)

The Publications for 1867-1910 (one guinea each year) are:—

- I. William of Palerne; or, William and the Werwolf. Re-edited by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 13s. 1867
 II. Early English Pronunciation with especial Reference to Shakspeare and Chaucer, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part I. 10s. "
 III. Caxton's Book of Curtesye, in Three Versions. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 5s. 1868
 IV. Havelok the Dane. Re-edited by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 10s. "
 V. Chaucer's Boethius. Edited from the two best MSS. by Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 12s. "
 VI. Chevelere Assigne. Re-edited from the unique MS. by Lord Aldenham, M.A. 3s. "
 VII. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part II. 10s. 1869
 VIII. Queene Elizabethes Achademy, &c. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. Essays on early Italian and German Books of Courtesy, by W. M. Rossetti and Dr. E. Oswald. 15s. "
 IX. Awdley's Fraternitey of Vacabondes, Harman's Caveat, &c. Ed. E. Viles & F. J. Furnivall. 5s. "
 X. Andrew Boorde's Introduction of Knowledge, 1547, Dyetary of Helth, 1542, Barnes in Defence of the Berde, 1542-3. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 18s. 1870
 XI. Barbour's Bruce, Part I. Ed. from MSS. and editions, by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 12s. "
 XII. England in Henry VIII's Time: a Dialogue between Cardinal Pole & Lupset, by Thom. Starkey, Chaplain to Henry VIII. Ed. J. M. Cowper. Part II. 12s. (Part I. is No. XXXII, 1878, 8s.) 1871
 XIII. A Supplicacyon of the Beggars, by Simon Fish, 1528-9 A.D., ed. F. J. Furnivall; with A Supplication to our Moste Soueraigne Lorde; A Supplication of the Poore Commons; and The Decaye of England by the Great Multitude of Sheep, ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6s. "
 XIV. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Part III. 10s. "
 XV. Robert Crowley's Thirty-One Epigrams, Voyce of the Last Trumpet, Way to Wealth, &c., A.D. 1550-1, edited by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 12s. 1872
 XVI. Chaucer's Treatise on the Astrolabe. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 6s. "
 XVII. The Complaynt of Scotlande, 1549 A.D., with 4 Tracts (1542-48), ed. Dr. Murray. Part I. 10s. "
 XVIII. The Complaynt of Scotlande, 1549 A.D., ed. Dr. Murray. Part II. 8s. 1873
 XIX. Oure Ladyes Myroure, A.D. 1530, ed. Rev. J. H. Blunt, M.A. 24s. "
 XX. Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail (ab. 1450 A.D.), ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part I. 8s. 1874
 XXI. Barbour's Bruce, Part II., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 4s. "
 XXII. Henry Brinklow's Complaynt of Roderick Mors (ab. 1542): and The Lamentacion of a Christian against the Citie of London, made by Roderigo Mors, A.D. 1545. Ed. J. M. Cowper. 9s. "
 XXIII. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part IV. 10s. "
 XXIV. Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part II. 10s. 1875
 XXV. Guy of Warwick, 15th-century Version, ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part I. 20s. "
 XXVI. Guy of Warwick, 15th-century Version, ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part II. 14s. 1876
 XXVII. Bp. Fisher's English Works (died 1535), ed. by Prof. J. E. B. Mayor. Part I, the Text. 16s. "
 XXVIII. Lovelich's Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part III. 10s. 1877
 XXIX. Barbour's Bruce. Part III., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 21s. "
 XXX. Lovelich's Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part IV. 15s. 1878
 XXXI. The Alliterative Romance of Alexander and Dindimus, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s. "
 XXXII. Starkey's "England in Henry VIII's time." Pt. I. Starkey's Life and Letters, ed. S. J. Herrtage. 8s. "
 XXXIII. Gesta Romanorum (englisht ab. 1440), ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A. 15s. 1879
 XXXIV. The Charlemagne Romances:—1. Sir Ferumbras, from Ashm. MS. 33, ed. S. J. Herrtage. 15s. "
 XXXV. Charlemagne Romances:—2. The Sege off Melayne, Sir Otuell, &c., ed. S. J. Herrtage. 12s. 1880
 XXXVI. Charlemagne Romances:—3. Lyf of Charles the Grete, Pt. I., ed. S. J. Herrtage. 16s. "
 XXXVII. Charlemagne Romances:—4. Lyf of Charles the Grete, Pt. II., ed. S. J. Herrtage. 15s. 1881
 XXXVIII. Charlemagne Romances:—5. The Sowdone of Babylone, ed. Dr. Hausknecht. 15s. "
 XXXIX. Charlemagne Romances:—6. Rauf Olyear, Roland, Otuel, &c., ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A. 15s. 1882
 XL. Charlemagne Romances:—7. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part I, 15s. "

- XLI. *Charlemagne Romances*:—8. *Huon of Burdeux*, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Pt. II. 15s. 1883
- XLII. *Guy of Warwick*: 2 texts (Auchinleck MS. and Caius MSS.), ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part I. 15s. "
- XLIII. *Charlemagne Romances*:—9. *Huon of Burdeux*, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Pt. III. 15s. 1884
- XLIV. *Charlemagne Romances*:—10. *The Four Sons of Aymon*, ed. Miss Octavia Richardson. Pt. I. 15s. "
- XLV. *Charlemagne Romances*:—11. *The Four Sons of Aymon*, ed. Miss O. Richardson. Pt. II. 20s. 1885
- XLVI. *Sir Bevis of Hamton*, from the Auchinleck and other MSS., ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. Part I. 10s. "
- XLVII. *The Wars of Alexander*, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 20s. 1886
- XLVIII. *Sir Bevis of Hamton*, ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. Part II. 10s. "
- XLIX. *Guy of Warwick*, 2 texts (Auchinleck and Caius MSS.), Pt. II., ed. Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D. 15s. 1887
- L. *Charlemagne Romances*:—12. *Huon of Burdeux*, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part IV. 5s. "
- LI. *Torrent of Portyngale*, from the unique MS. in the Chetham Library, ed. E. Adam, Ph.D. 10s. "
- LII. *Bullein's Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilence, 1578* (ed. 1, 1564). Ed. M. & A. H. Bullen. 10s. 1888
- LIII. *Vicary's Anatomie of the Body of Man, 1549*, ed. 1577, ed. F. J. & Percy Furnivall. Part I. 15s. "
- LIV. *Caxton's Engliashing of Alain Chartier's Curial*, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall & Prof. P. Meyer. 5s. "
- LV. *Barbour's Bruce*, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. Part IV. 5s. 1889
- LVI. *Early English Pronunciation*, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Pt. V., the present English Dialects. 25s. "
- LVII. *Caxton's Eneydos*, A.D. 1490, coll. with its French, ed. M. T. Culley, M.A. & Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 13s. 1890
- LVIII. *Caxton's Blanchardyn & Eglantine*, c. 1489, extracts from ed. 1595, & French, ed. Dr. L. Kellner. 17s. "
- LIX. *Guy of Warwick*, 2 texts (Auchinleck and Caius MSS.), Part III., ed. Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D. 15s. 1891
- LX. *Lydgate's Temple of Glass*, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. J. Schick. 15s. "
- LXI. *Hoccleve's Minor Poems*, I., from the Philipps and Durham MSS., ed. F. J. Furnivall, Ph.D. 15s. 1892
- LXII. *The Chester Plays*, re-edited from the MSS. by the late Dr. Hermann Deimling. Part I. 15s. "
- LXIII. *Thomas a Kempis's De Imitatione Christi*, english ab. 1440, & 1502, ed. Prof. J. K. Ingram. 15s. 1893
- LXIV. *Caxton's Godfrey of Bolyne, or Last Siege of Jerusalem, 1481*, ed. Dr. Mary N. Colvin. 15s. "
- LXV. *Sir Bevis of Hamton*, ed. Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D. Part III. 15s. 1894
- LXVI. *Lydgate's and Burgh's Secrees of Philisoffres*, ab. 1445—50, ed. R. Steele, B.A. 15s. "
- LXVII. *The Three Kings' Sons*, a Romance, ab. 1500, Part I., the Text, ed. Dr. Furnivall. 10s. 1895
- LXVIII. *Melusine*, the prose Romance, ab. 1500, Part I., the Text, ed. A. K. Donald. 20s. "
- LXIX. *Lydgate's Assembly of the Gods*, ed. Prof. Oscar L. Triggs, M.A., Ph.D. 15s. 1896
- LXX. *The Digny Plays*, edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 15s. "
- LXXI. *The Towneley Plays*, ed. Geo. England and A. W. Pollard, M.A. 15s. 1897
- LXXII. *Hoccleve's Regement of Princes, 1411-12, and 14 Poems*, edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 15s. "
- LXXIII. *Hoccleve's Minor Poems*, II., from the Ashburnham MS., ed. I. Gollancz, M.A. [At Press.]
- LXXIV. *Secreta Secretorum*, 3 prose Engliishings, by Jas. Yonge, 1428, ed. R. Steele, B.A. Part I. 20s. 1898
- LXXV. *Speculum Guidonis de Warwyk*, edited by Miss G. L. Morrill, M.A., Ph.D. 10s. "
- LXXVI. *George Ashby's Poems, &c.*, ed. Miss Mary Bateson. 15s. 1899
- LXXVII. *Lydgate's DeGuilleville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, 1426*, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Part I. 10s. "
- LXXVIII. *The Life and Death of Mary Magdalene*, by T. Robinson, c. 1620, ed. Dr. H. O. Sommer. 5s. "
- LXXIX. *Caxton's Dialogues, English and French*, c. 1483, ed. Henry Bradley, M.A. 10s. 1900
- LXXX. *Lydgate's Two Nightingale Poems*, ed. Dr. Otto Glauning. 5s. "
- LXXXI. *Gower's Confessio Amantis*, edited by G. C. Macaulay, M.A. Vol. I. 15s. "
- LXXXII. *Gower's Confessio Amantis*, edited by G. C. Macaulay, M.A. Vol. II. 15s. 1901
- LXXXIII. *Lydgate's DeGuilleville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man, 1426*, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Pt. II. 10s. "
- LXXXIV. *Lydgate's Reason and Sensuality*, edited by Dr. E. Sieper. Part I. 5s. "
- LXXXV. *Alexander Scott's Poems, 1568*, from the unique Edinburgh MS., ed. A. K. Donald, B.A. 10s. 1902
- LXXXVI. *William of Shoreham's Poems*, re-ed. from the unique MS. by Dr. M. Konrath. Part I. 10s. "
- LXXXVII. *Two Coventry Corpus-Christi Plays*, re-edited by Hardin Craig, M.A. 10s. "
- LXXXVIII. *Le Morte Arthur*, re-edited from the Harleian MS. 2252 by Prof. Bruce, Ph.D. 15s. 1903
- LXXXIX. *Lydgate's Reason and Sensuality*, edited by Dr. E. Sieper. Part II. 15s. "
- XC. *English Fragments from Latin Medieval Service-Books*, ed. by Hy. Littlehales. 5s. "
- XCI. *The Macro Plays*, from Mr. Gurney's unique MS., ed. Dr. Furnivall and A. W. Pollard, M.A. 10s. 1904
- XCII. *Lydgate's DeGuilleville's Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*, Part III., ed. Miss Looock. 10s. "
- XCIII. *Lovelich's Romance of Merlin*, from the unique MS., ed. Dr. E. A. Koek. Part I. 10s. "
- XCIV. *Respublica*, a Play on Social England, A.D. 1553, ed. L. A. Magnus, LL.B. 12s. 1905
- XCV. *Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail*, Pt. V.: *The Legend of the Holy Grail*, by Dorothy Kempe. 6s. "
- XCVI. *Mirk's Festial*, edited from the MSS. by Dr. Erbo. Part I. 12s. "
- XCVII. *Lydgate's Troy Book*, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Hy. Bergen. Part I, Books I and II. 15s. 1906
- XCVIII. *Skelton's Magnyfycence*, edited by Dr. R. L. Ramsay, with an Introduction. 7s. 6d. "
- XCIX. *The Romance of Emaré*, re-edited from the MS. by Miss Edith Rickert, Ph.D. 7s. 6d. "
- C. *The Harrowing of Hell, and The Gospel of Nicodemus*, re-ed. by Prof. Hulme, M.A., Ph.D. 15s. 1907
- CI. *Songs, Carols, &c.*, from Richard Hill's Balliol MS., edited by Dr. Roman Dybaski. 15s. "
- CII. *Promptorium Parvulorum*, the 1st English-Latin Dictionary, ed. Rev. A. L. Mayhew, M.A. 21s. 1908
- CIII. *Lydgate's Troy Book*, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Hy. Bergen. Part II, Book III. 10s. "
- CIV. *The Non-Cycle Mystery Plays*, re-edited by O. Waterhouse, M.A. 15s. 1909
- CV. *The Tale of Beryn, with the Pardoner and Tapster*, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall and W. G. Stone. 15s. "
- CVI. *Lydgate's Troy Book*, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Hy. Bergen. Part III. 15s. 1910
- CVII. *Lydgate's Minor Poems*, edited by Dr. H. N. MacCracken. Part I, Religious Poems. 15s. [At Press.]
- CVIII. *Lydgate's Siege of Thebes*, re-edited from the MSS. by Prof. Dr. A. Erdmann. Pt. I, The Text. 15s. 1911
- CIX. *Partonope*, re-edited from its 3 MSS. by Dr. A. T. Bødtker. The Texts. 15s. "
- CX. *Caxton's Mirror of the World*, with all the woodcuts, ed. by O. H. Prior, M.A., Litt.D. 15s. [At Press.] 1912
- CXI. *Caxton's History of Jason*, the Text, Part I, ed. by John Munro. 15s. . Press.

EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY TEXTS PREPARING.

Besides the Texts named as at press on p. 12 of the Early English Text Society's last Announcements, the following Texts are also slowly preparing for the Society:—

ORIGINAL SERIES.

- The Earliest English Prose Psalter, ed. Dr. K. D. Buelbring. Part II.
 The Earliest English Verse Psalter, 3 texts, ed. Rev. R. Harvey, M.A.
 Anglo-Saxon Poems, from the Vercelli MS., re-edited by Prof. I. Gollancz, M.A.
 Anglo-Saxon Glosses to Latin Prayers and Hymns, edited by Dr. F. Holthausen.
 All the Anglo-Saxon Homilies and Lives of Saints not accessible in English editions, including those of the Vercelli MS. &c., edited by Prof. Napier, M.A., Ph.D.
 The englisht *Disciplina Clericalis*, Worcester Cathedral MS. 172, ed. Prof. W. H. Hulme, Ph.D.
 The Statutes of Black Roger, Worcester Cathedral MS. 172, ed. Prof. W. H. Hulme, Ph.D.
 The Anglo-Saxon Psalms; all the MSS. in Parallel Texts, ed. Dr. H. Loxeman and F. Harsley, B.A.
 Beowulf, a critical Text, &c., edited by a Pupil of the late Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.
 Byrhtferth's Handbooc, ed. by Prof. G. Hempf.
 Early English Confessionals, ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.
 The Seven Sages, in the Northern Dialect, from a Cotton MS., edited by Dr. Squires.
 The Master of the Game, a Book of Huntynge for Hen. V. when Prince of Wales, ed. G. A. Beacock, B.A.
 Aired's Rule of Nuns, &c., edited from the Vernon MS., by the Rev. Canon H. R. Bramley, M.A.
 A Lapidary, from Lord Tollemache's MS., &c., edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.
 Early English Deeds and Documents, from unique MSS., ed. Dr. Lorenz Morsbach.
 Gilbert Banastre's Poems, and other Boccaccio englishings, ed. by Prof. Dr. Max Förster.
 Lanfranc's *Chirurgie*, ab. 1400 A.D., ed. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker, Part II.
 William of Nassington's *Mirror of Life*, from Jn. of Waldby, edited by J. A. Herbert, M.A.
 Early Canterbury Wills, edited by William Cowper, B.A., and J. Meadows Cowper.
 Alliterative Prophecies, edited from the MSS. by Prof. Brandl, Ph.D.
 Miscellaneous Alliterative Poems, edited from the MSS. by Dr. L. Morsbach.
 Bird and Beast Poems, a collection from MSS., edited by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 Soire Mori, &c., from the Lichfield MS. 16, ed. Mrs. L. Grindon, LL.A., and Mrs. R. Taylor.
 Nicholas Trivet's French Chronicle, from Sir A. Acland-Hood's unique MS., ed. by F. W. Clarke, M.A.
 Early English Homilies in Harl. 2276, &c., c. 1400, ed. J. Friedländer.
 Extracts from the Registers of Boughton, ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq.
 The Diary of Prior Moore of Worcester, A.D. 1518-35, from the unique MS., ed. Henry Littlehales, Esq.
 The Pore Caitif, edited from its MSS., by Mr. Peake.
 Trevisa's englisht *Vegetius on the Art of War*, MS. 30 Magd. Coll. Oxf., ed. L. C. Wharton, M.A.
 Poems attributed to Richard Maydenstone, from MS. Rawl. A 389, edited by Dr. W. Hensler.
 Knighthood and Battle, a verse-*Vegetius* from a Pembroke Coll. MS., Cambr., ed. Dr. R. Dyboski.
 Othea and Hector, 3 texts—2 from MSS., 1 from Wyer's print, edited by Hy. N. MacCracken, Ph.D.
 Miner Poems of the Vernon MS. Part III. Introduction and Glossary by H. Hartley, M.A.
 Sir David Lyndesay's Works. Part VI. and last. Edited by the Rev. Wm. Bayne, M.A. [At Press.
 Prayers and Devotions, from the unique MS. Cotton Titus C. 19, ed. Hy. Littlehales Esq. [Copied.

EXTRA SERIES.

- Sp. Fisher's English Works, Pt. II., with his Life and Letters, ed. Rev. Ronald Bayne, B.A. [At Press.
 Sir Tristrem, from the unique Auchinleck MS., edited by George F. Black.
 De Guilleville's Pilgrimage of the Sowle, edited by Mr. Hans Koestner.
 Vicary's Anatomie, 1548, from the unique MS. copy by George Jeans, edited by F. J. & Percy Fumivall.
 Vicary's Anatomie, 1548, ed. 1577, edited by F. J. & Percy Fumivall. Part II.
 A Compilation of Surgerye, from H. de Mandeville and Lanfrank, A.D. 1392, ed. Dr. J. F. Payne.
 William Staunton's St. Patrick's Purgatory, &c., ed. Mr. G. P. Krapp, U.S.A.
 Trevisa's Bartholomæus de Proprietatibus Rerum, re-edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.
 Bullein's Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilence, 1564, 1573, 1578. Ed. A. H. and M. Bullen. Part II.
 The Romance of Boetius and Sidrac, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 The Romance of Clariodus, and Sir Amadas, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 Sir Degrevant, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. Luick.
 Robert of Brunne's Chronicle of England, from the Inner Temple MS., ed. by Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph.D.
 Maundeville's Voiage and Travaile, re-edited from the Cotton MS. Titus C. 16, &c. (Editor wanted.)
 Awowynge of Arthur, re-edited from the unique Ireland MS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.
 Guy of Warwick, Copland's version, edited by a pupil of the late Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.
 Awdelay's Poems, re-edited from the unique MS. Douce 302, by Prof. Dr. E. Wulffing.
 The Wyse Chylde and other early Treatises on Education, Northwich School, Harl. 2099, &c., ed. G. Collar, B.A.
 Caxton's Dites and Sayengis of Philosophers, 1477, with Lord Tollemache's MS. version, ed. S. I. Butler, Esq.
 Lydgate's Lyfe of oure Lady, ed. by Prof. Georg Fiedler, Ph.D.
 Lydgate's Life of St. Edmund, edited from the MSS. by Dr. Axel Erdmann.
 Richard Coer de Lion, re-edited from Harl. MS. 4690, by Prof. Hausknecht, Ph.D.
 The Romance of Athelstan, re-edited by a pupil of the late Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D.

EXTRA SERIES (continued).

The Romance of Sir Degare, re-edited by Dr. Breul.
 The Gospel of Nichodemus, edited by Ernest Riedel.
 Mulcaster's *Positions* 1581, and *Elementarie* 1582, ed. Dr. Th. Klaehr, Dresden.
 Walton's verse *Boethius de Consolatione*, edited by Dr. H. C. Schümmer.
 Sir Landeval and Sir Launfal, edited by Dr. Zimmermann.
 Rolland's Seven Sages, the Scottish version of 1560, edited by George F. Black.
 Burgh's *Oto*, re-edited from all the MSS. by Prof. Dr. Max Förster.
 Wynkyn de Worde's English and French Phrase-book, etc., edited by Hermann Oelsner, Ph.D.
 Extracts from the Rochester Diocesan Registers, ed. Hy. Littlehales.
 The Coventry Plays, re-edited from the unique MS. by Dr. Matthews.
 Walter Hylton's *Ladder of Perfection*, re-edited from the MSS. by Miss K. B. Locock.

Among the MSS. and old books which need copying or re-editing, are:—

ORIGINAL SERIES.

English Inventories and other MSS. in Canterbury Cathedral (5th Report, Hist. MSS. Com.).
 Maumetrie, from Lord Tollemache's MS.
 The Romance of Troy. Harl. 525, Addit. Br. Mus.
 Biblical MS., Corpus Cambr. 434 (ab. 1375).
 Hampole's unprinted Works.
 þe Clowde of Unknowyng, from Harl. MSS. 2373, 959.
 Bibl. Reg. 17 C 26, &c. Univ. Coll. Oxf. 14.
 A Lanterne of Liht, from Harl. MS. 2324.
 Soule-hele, from the Vernon MS.
 Boethius de Consol.; Pilgrim, 1426, &c. &c.
 Early Treatises on Music: Descant, the Gamme, &c.
 Skelton's englisshing of Diodorus Siculus.
 Boethius, in prose, MS. Auct. F. 3. 5, Bodley.
 Penitential Psalms. by Rd. Maydenstoon, Brampton, &c. (Rawlinson, A. 389, Douce 232, &c.).
 Documents from the early Registers of the Bishops of all Dioceses in Great Britain.
 Ordinances and Documents of the City of Worcester.
 T. Breus's Passion of Christ, 1422. Harl. 2398.
 Jn. Crophill or Crephill's Tracts, Harl. 1735.
 Memoriale Oredencium, &c., Harl. 2398.
 Early English Verse Lives of Saints, Standard Collection, from the Harl. MS.
 Early Norwich Wills.
 Book for Recluses, Harl. 2372.
 Lollard Theological Treatises, Harl. 2343, 2380, &c.
 H. Selby's Northern Ethical Tract, Harl. 2388, art. 20.
 Supplementary Early English Lives of Saints.
 Select Prose Treatises from the Vernon MS.
 Lyrical Poems from the Fairfax MS. 16, &c.
 Prose Life of St. Audry, A.D. 1595, Corp. Oxf. 120.
 English Miscellanies from MSS., Corp. Oxford.
 Miscellanies from Oxford College MSS.
 Disce Mori, Jesus Coll. Oxf. 39; Bodl. Laud 99.
 Mirrour of the blessed liyf of Ihesu Crist. MSS. of Sir Hy. Ingilby, Bart., Lord Aldenham, Univ. Coll. Oxf. 123, &c.
 Poem on Virtues and Vices, &c., Harl. 2260.
 Maundevyle's Legend of Gwydo, Queen's, Oxf. 383.
 Book of Warrants of Edw. VI., &c., New Coll. Oxf. 328.
 Adam Loutfut's Heraldic Tracts, Harl. 6149-50.
 Rules for Gunpowder and Ordnance, Harl. 6555.
 John Watton's englisht Speculum Christiani, Corpus, Oxf. 155, Laud G. 12, Thoresby 580, Harl. 2250, art. 20.
 Verse and Prose in Harl. MS. 4012.
 Nicholas of Hereford's English Bible.
 The Prickyng of Love, Harl. 2254, Vernon, &c.
 More Early English Wills from the Probate Registry at Somerset House.

EXTRA SERIES.

Erle of Tolous.	Ypotis.	Octavian.
Sir Eglamoure.	Alexander.	Libeaus Desconus.
Orfeo (Digby, 86).		Ywain and Gawain.
Dialogues between the Soul and Body.		Sir Isumbras.
Barlaam and Josaphat.		Pilgrimage to Jerusalem, Queen's Coll. Oxf. 357.
Amis and Amiloun.		Other Pilgrimages to Jerusalem, Harl. 2333, &c.
Sir Generides, from Lord Tollemache's MS.		Horse. Penitential Psalms, &c., Queen's Coll. Oxf. 207.
The Troy-Book fragments once said Barbour's, in the Cambr. Univ. Library and Douce MSS.		St. Brandan's Confession, Queen's Coll. Oxf. 210.
Poems of Charles, Duke of Orleans.		Scotch Heraldry Tracts, copy of Caxton's Book of Chivalry, &c., Queen's Coll. Oxford 161.
Carols and Songs.		Stevyn Serpene's Doctryne and Wyshedome of the Auncyent Philosophers, A.D. 1450, Harl. 2266.
Songs and Ballads, Ashmole MS. 48.		

The Subscription to the Society, which constitutes membership, is £1 ls. a year for the ORIGINAL SERIES, and £1 ls. for the EXTRA SERIES, due in advance on the 1st of JANUARY, and should be paid by Cheque, Postal Order, or Money-Order, cross 'Union of London and Smiths Bank.' to the Hon. Secretary, W. A. DALZIEL, Esq., 67, Victoria Road, Finsbury Park, London, N. Members who want their Texts posted to them must add to their prepaid Subscriptions 1s. for the Original Series, and 1s. for the Extra Series, yearly. The Society's Texts are also sold separately at the prices put after them in the Lists; but Members can get back-Texts at one-third less than the List-prices by sending the cash for them in advance to the Hon. Secretary.
 Foreign Subscriptions can be paid, and the Society's Texts delivered, through Asher & Co., 17, Behrenstrasse, Berlin.

ORIGINAL SERIES.

The Publications for 1911 (one guinea) were :—

141. *Earth upon Earth*, all the known texts, ed., with an Introduction, by Miss Hilda Murray, M.A. 10s.
142. *The English Register of Godstow Nunnery*, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Part III. 10s.
143. *The Wars of Alexander the Great*, Thornton MS., ed. J. S. Westlake, M.A. [At Press.] 10s.

The Publications for 1912 (one guinea) are :—

144. *The English Register of Oseney Abbey*, by Oxford, ed. by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Part II. 10s.
145. *The Northern Passion*, four parallel texts and the French original, edited from the MSS. by Frances A. Foster. The Parallel Texts, Part I. 15s.

The Publications for 1913 (one guinea) are :—

146. *The Coventry Leet-Book*, ed. from the unique MS. by Miss M. Dormer Harris. Introduction, Indexes, &c., Part IV. 10s.
147. *The Northern Passion*, the French Text, Variants and Fragments, &c., ed. Miss F. A. Foster. Part II. [At Press.]

[Together with an enlarged Reprint of No. 28, originally edited by the Rev. G. G. Perry, *Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse*. (At Press.)]

The Publications for 1914 will be chosen from :—

- An Alphabet of Tales, in Northern English, from the Latin, ed. Mrs. M. M. Banks. Part III.
 Twenty-six Political and other Poems from Digby MS. 102, &c., edited by Dr. J. Kail. Part II.
 The Brut, or the Chronicles of England, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. F. Brie. Part III. Notes, &c.
 The Laud Troy-Book, edited from the unique MS. Laud 595, by Dr. J. Ernst Wülfing. Part III.
 The Old-English Rule of Bp. Chrodegang, and the Capitula of Bp. Theodulf, ed. Prof. Napier, Ph.D. [At Press]
 Robert of Brunne's Handlyng Synne (1303), and its French original. Part III.
 The Alliterative Siege of Jerusalem, edited by Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D., and Prof. Kaluza, Ph.D. [At Press]
 Alain Chartier's Quadrilogue, englished, edited from the unique MS. by Prof. J. W. H. Atkins, M.A.
 Jacob's Well, edited from the unique Salisbury Cathedral MS. by Dr. A. Braudeis. Part II.
 Vices and Virtues, from the unique MS., ab. 1200 A.D., ed. Prof. Dr. F. Holthausen, Part II. [At Press.
 The Exeter Book (Anglo-Saxon Poems), re-ed. from the unique MS., by Prof. Gollancz, Litt.D. Part II. [At Press]
 North-English Metrical Homilies, from Ashmole MS. 42 &c., ed. G. H. Gerould, D.Litt.
 Vegetius on the Art of War, edited from the MSS. by L. C. Wharton, M.A.
 Shirley's Book of Good Manners, edited from the unique MS. by Hermann Oelsner, Ph.D.
 Verse and Prose from the Harl. MS. 2253, re-ed. by Miss Hilda Murray, M.A., of the Royal Holloway College.
 Early Lincoln Wills and Documents from the Bishops' Registers, &c., ed. by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark.
 A Stanzaic Exposition of the Feasts of the Church and the Life of Christ based on the *Legenda Aurea*, ed. from the MSS., Harl. 3909, Harl. 2250, and Addit. 38866, by Miss F. A. Foster. [At Press.
 The Earliest English Apocalypse with a Commentary, edited by Dr. Anna C. Paves.
 Dives and Pauper, ed. from the MSS. by Mr. Richardson, M.A.
 A Fifteenth-Century Courtesy Book and Two Franciscan Rules, edited by R. W. Chambers, M.A., Litt.D., and W. W. Sutton, M.A. [At Press.]

EXTRA SERIES.

The Publications for 1911 (one guinea) were :—

- CVIII. *Lydgate's Siege of Thebes*, re-edited from the MSS. by Prof. Dr. A. Erdmann. Part I, The Text. 15s.
- CIX. *Pardonope*, re-edited from its 3 MSS. by Dr. A. T. Böttker. The Texts. 15s.

The Publications for 1912 (one guinea) are :—

- CX. *Caxton's Mirror of the World*, with all the Woodcuts, edited by O. H. Prior, M.A. 15s.
- CXI. *Caxton's History of Jason*, edited by John Munro. Part I, the Text. 15s.

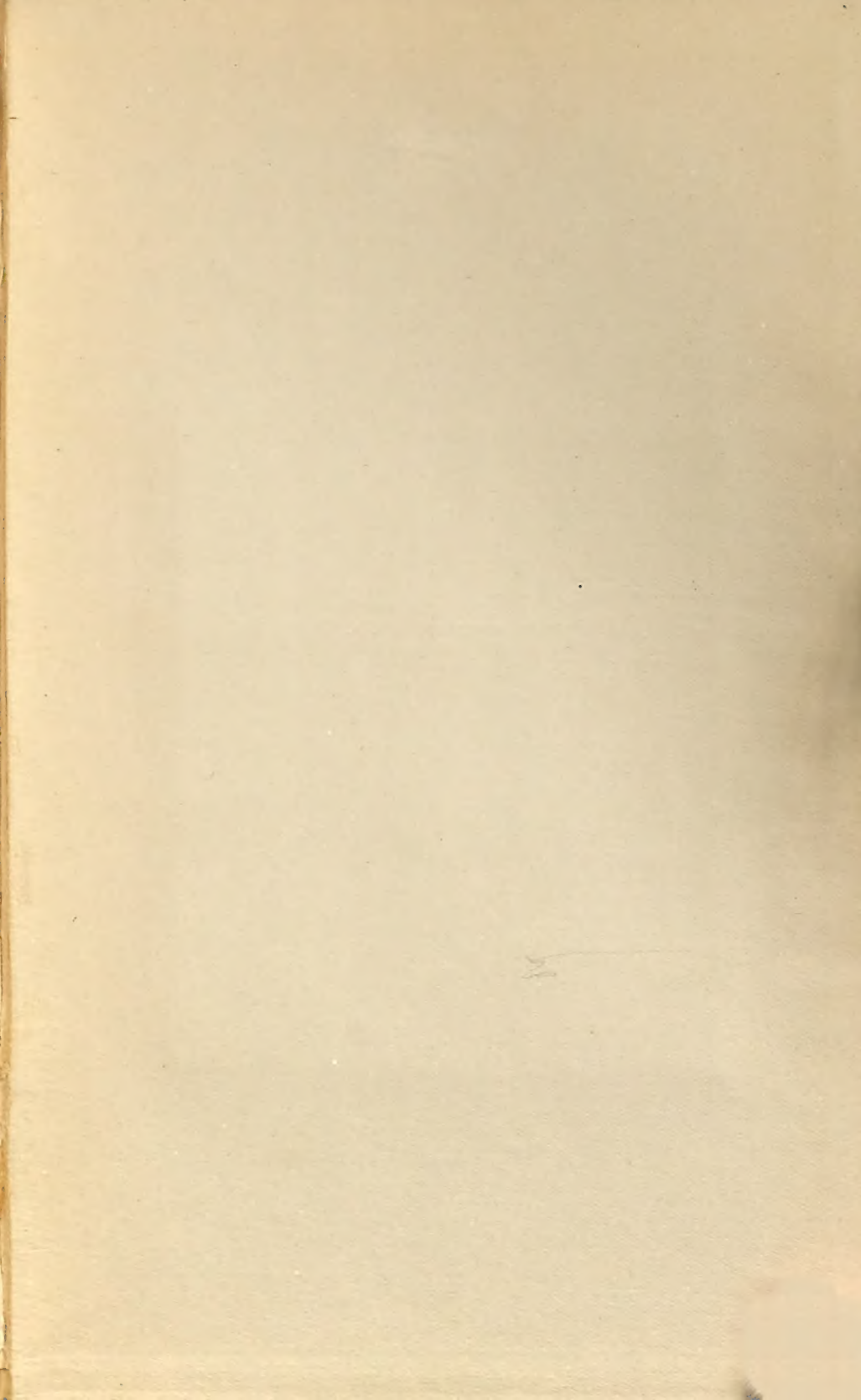
The Publications for 1913 (one guinea) are :—

- CXII. *Lovelich's Romance of Merlin*, edited from the unique MS. by Prof. Dr. E. A. Kock. Part II. 15s.
- CXIII. *Poems by Sir John Salusbury, Robert Chester, and others*, from Christ Church MS. 184, ed. by Dr. Carleton Brown. [At Press.]

The Publications for 1914 will be chosen from :—

- De Medicina*, a 12th-century Englishing, re-edited by Prof. Joseph Delcourt. [At Press.
 Lydgate's Minor Poems, ed. Dr. H. N. MacCracken. Part II, Secular Poems. [At Press.
 Lydgate's Troy Book, ed. by Dr. Hy. Bergen. Part IV, Introduction, Notes, &c. [At Press.
 Lydgate's Dance of Death, edited from the MSS. by Miss Florence Warren.
 Lydgate's Siege of Thebes, re-edited from the MSS. by Prof. Dr. A. Erdmann. Part II, Notes, &c.
 The Owl and Nightingale, 2 Texts parallel, ed. G. F. H. Sykes, Esq. [At Press.
 The Court of Sapience, once thought Lydgate's, edited by Dr. Jaeger.
 Mirk's Festival, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Erbe. Part II.
 William of Shoreham's Poems, re-edited by Dr. M. Konrath. Part II.
 Winner and Waster, &c., two Alliterative Poems, re-edited by Prof. I. Gollancz, Litt.D.
 Melusine, the prose Romance, from the unique MS., ab. 1500, ed. A. K. Donald, B.A. Part II. [At Press.
 Secreta Secretorum : three prose Englishings, ab. 1440, ed. R. Steele, B.A. Part II. [At Press.
 The Craft of Nombrynge, the earliest English Treatise on Arithmetic, ed. R. Steele, B.A.
 The Book of the Foundation of St. Bartholomew's Hospital, London, MS. ab. 1425, ed. Dr. Norman Moore. [Set
 The Chester Plays, Part II., re-edited by Dr. Matthews. [At Press.
 Lichfield Gilds, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall : Introduction by Prof. E. C. K. Gonner. [Text done
 John Hart's Orthographie, from his unique MS. 1551, and his black-letter text, 1509, ed. Prof. Otto Jespersen, Ph.D.
 John Hart's Methode to teach Reading, 1570, ed. Prof. Otto Jespersen, Ph.D.
 The Three Kings' Sons, Part II, French collation, Introduction, &c., by Dr. L. Kellner.
 The Ancren Riwle, edited from its five MSS., by the late Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D., and Dr. Thimmler.
 Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail, Part VI.
 The Awnturs of Arthur, 2 Texts from the 3 MSS., edited by Wilhelm Wolff.
 Caxton's Book of the Order of Chynalry, edited by Miss Alice H. Davies.
 Early English Fabliaux, edited by Prof. George H. McKnight, Ph.D.
 Ragman Roll, The Chaunce of the Dyse, Ballads, Complaints, and other Pieces, from MS. Fairfax 16, edited by Prof. Edith Morley.
 Piers Plowman, the A Text, re-edited from the MSS. by R. W. Chambers, M.A., Litt.D., and J. H. G. Grattan, M.A. [At Press.
 Caxton's Prologues, ed. by Henry Wheatley, Litt.D.

LONDON: KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.,
 BROADWAY HOUSE, LUDGATE HILL, E.C.
 AND HUMPHREY MILFORD, OXFORD UNIV. PRESS, AMEN CORNER, E.C.
 BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 17, BEHRENSTRASSE.





33-475

PR 1119.A2 no.143

The prose lit

cen



3 0081 003 325 564